JIHAD IDEAS OF `ABD ALLĀH `AZZĀM
AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS
FOR NATIONAL SECURITY

MUHAMMAD HANIFF HASSAN

S. RAJARATNAM SCHOOL OF INTERNATIONAL STUDIES
2012
JIHAD IDEAS OF ‘ABD ALLĀH ‘AZZĀM
AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS FOR NATIONAL SECURITY

Muhammad Haniff Hassan

S. Rajaratnam School of International Studies

A thesis submitted to the Nanyang Technological University in partial fulfilment of the requirement for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy (Strategic Studies)

2012
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Praises be to

• the Lord for the blessings;

• my beloved wife, Faiza, and children, Usaid, Azzam, Husna, Iz, If and Rusyda for their support and understanding;

• my parents, Hassan and Kalthom, for their constant prayers;

• my Professors for their knowledge and guidance;

• my colleagues in the International Centre for Political Violence and Terrorism Research (ICPVTR) for their friendship and assistance;

• my friends and siblings for their encouragement;

without which I would not be able to complete this journey.

Very special thanks to

• Assoc. Prof. Kumar Ramakrishna for supervising this dissertation;

• Prof. Rohan Gunaratna, Head of ICPVTR, for giving me a flexible working arrangement that allowed me to complete this dissertation;

• Roslinah Rasdi, Roslina Johari and Yee Ming for rendering their much-valued technical assistance.

May the Force be with us, Amin.

Muhammad Haniff Hassan
Singapore
2012
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transliteration Table</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1: Jihad Thought of 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām: Making the Case for a</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Background to the Study</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o The threat of jihadist terrorism</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o The importance of counter-ideology</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A Case for a Case Study</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o The important role of the Soviet-Afghan war</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām: His life and role during the Soviet-Afghan War</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Research Plan</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Aim and objective</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o What the study can offer?</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Methodology</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Unit of analysis, research questions, assumptions and structure</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Conclusion</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 2: Locating Jihadist Terrorism Within Strategic Studies</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Introduction</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Relevance of Jihadist Terrorism to Strategic Studies
  - Introducing strategic studies
  - Locating jihadist terrorism in strategic studies
- Ideas in Security Studies
- Ideas Matter Actually
- Current Trend
- Conclusion

Chapter 3: Shades of Jihad Thought and Trail of Militant Viewpoint
- Introduction
- Classical Strand of Jihad
  - Meaning of jihad
  - Fundamental prerequisite
  - Various forms of jihad
  - Theological basis
  - Stages of jihad
  - The importance of jihad
  - Ruling of armed jihad
  - On fighters
  - On the enemy
  - Rules before battle
  - Rules during battle
  - Rules after battle
  - Management of war booty
  - Management of prisoners of war
  - Participation of non-Muslims in armed jihad
  - Martyrdom
  - Classical Shiite’s view of jihad
  - Justification for armed jihad
- Traditionalist Strand of Jihad
• Reformist Strand of Jihad 92
• Militant Strand of Jihad 102
  o The context 105
  o The ideologues 106
• Concluding Comments 120
  o Diverse views of jihad 120
  o Factors contributing to the diversity 121
  o Different genres 125
  o Greater jihad first 125
  o Rethinking past, current and future 126
  o Conclusion and moving the research forward 128

Chapter 4: `Abd Allāh `Azzām’s Jihad Ideas 129
• Introduction 129
• `Azzām’s Worldview 130
• Definition of Jihad 133
• Status of Jihad in Islam 134
  o The pinnacle of Islam 134
  o Jihad guarantees glory for Islam 135
  o Jihad guarantees the survival of Islam 136
  o Jihad guarantees survival of humanity 137
  o Jihad produces true Muslims 137
  o Jihad is the gauge 138
• Other Ideas Relevant to Jihad 138
  o The importance of intention 138
  o The division of lands 139
  o Four stages of Islamic struggle 140
  o Four steps of jihad 140
• Types of Jihad 143
• Ruling of Jihad 143
• Stages of Revelation 147
• Objective of Jihad 148
• Who Can Fight for Jihad? 148
• Ethics and Rules of Jihad 149
  o Dakwah, warning and declaration 150
  o Legitimate targets 150
  o Non-legitimate targets 151
  o Peace agreement and cease fire 153
  o Tactics and means 154
  o Fighting in the sacred months and land 155
  o Personal ethics & attributes 156
  o Desertion, retreat and withdrawal 156
  o Prisoners of war and the vanquished 156
  o Others 158
• Martyrs 159
• Jihad and Ibhāb (Terrorism) 159
• The Idea of Al-Qā'īdah 161
  o The concept 161
  o The qualities 162
  o The means 164
  o Eight guiding principles 165
• Commenting on `Azzām 166

Chapter 5: Framing Jihad for Mobilization 170
• Introduction 170
• `Azzām’s Worldview and Jihad Ideas 173
• From Worldview to Collective Action Frames 179
  o First frame: Jihad for defending Afghanistan 179
  o Second frame: Jihad for Islamism 180
  o Analysing both frames 182
- Frame Resonance/Alignment
  - The first frame
  - The second frame
- Frame Resonance Strategy
  - The first frame
  - The second frame
- Emerging Inconsistencies
- Frames and Counter-Frames
  - Enemy
  - Non-Muslims
  - Fellow Muslims
- Conclusion

Chapter 6: The Implications of ‘Azzam’s Ideas for National Security
- Introduction
- ‘Azzam’s Ideas and Security
- Not Just Ideas
  - Precipitant event
  - Powerful allies
- ‘Azzam’s Ideas and Countering Terrorism
- Conclusion

Chapter 7: ‘Azzam & Beyond: Insights For Current Counter-Jihadism Work
- Introduction
- Issues Arising: Insights & Recommendations
  - Addressing ‘Azzam’s ideas
  - Leveraging counter-jihadism from ‘Azzam’s ideas
  - Not just ideas but also epistemology
  - Promoting debates among jihadists and between jihadists and
others
  o Multi-disciplinary approach to the study of jihad 255
  o Addressing non-ideational structural factors 257
• Conclusion 261

Bibliography
• ‘Abd Allāh ‘Azzām’s Materials (Primary Sources) 267
• Secondary Sources 282
• Other Materials 290
# TRANSLITERATION TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Romanisation</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Romanisation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>اً</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>طً</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>بً</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>ذً</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>تً</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>عً</td>
<td>'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ثً</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>غً</td>
<td>gh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>جً</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>فً</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>حً</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>قً</td>
<td>q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>خً</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td>كً</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>دً</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>لً</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ذً</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>مً</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>رً</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>نً</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>زً</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>وً</td>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>سً</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>هً</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>شً</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>ءً</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>صً</td>
<td>š</td>
<td>يً</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ضً</td>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th>Long Vowels</th>
<th>Diphthongs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ـ</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ـا</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ـ</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ـى</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ـ</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ـى</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ـ</td>
<td>ـو</td>
<td>ـو</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ـ</td>
<td>ـع</td>
<td>ـع</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABSTRACT

This study revolves around the jihad ideas of `Abd Allâh `Azzâm – an iconic figure in jihadist circles. To date there has been no single work in English dedicated to the study of his jihad ideas – a fact underscoring this study as an original academic contribution.

This study has several objectives. The first is to render an in-depth description of his ideas by way of a review of his writing, hitherto little referenced in the literature. The second objective is to identify how these ideas have inspired so many to participate in militant jihad in the Soviet-Afghan war, and indeed elsewhere. The third objective of this study is to highlight the internal contradictions and inconsistencies in `Azzâm’s ideas, and to juxtapose these ideas with contemporary jihadism. The fourth objective is to identify specific aspects of `Azzâm’s ideas in order to extract key lessons for counter-ideology work within the framework of counter-terrorism.

The primary approach of this study is that of a qualitative literature review of `Azzâm’s books, articles and transcripts of sermons and speeches. In analysing the text, the study applies Snow et. al.’s framing method, used in the study of social movements as the key analytical tool.

Upon reviewing all of `Azzâm’s literature and other relevant published materials, the study concludes and makes three key arguments/observations on `Azzâm’s jihad ideas. The first is `Azzâm’s success in mobilising Muslims for jihad in Afghanistan was not due to his jihad ideas alone, although they mattered to him and were important tools for mobilisation. The study identifies two other non-ideational structural factors that were critical in effecting his mobilisation. Secondly, some aspects of `Azzâm’s jihad ideas have serious implications on national security. Thirdly, some of `Azzâm’s jihad ideas diverge from dominant ideas held by current jihadist groups like Al-Qaeda and these could potentially be used to counter contemporary jihad ideas and practices of jihadists.
The study then addresses the above observations and all other issues arising from it with the objective of providing insights to delegitimise current jihadist ideology, thereby providing a means towards the mitigation of its threat to national and global security.
CHAPTER 1

JIHAD IDEAS OF 'ABD ALLĀH 'AZZĀM: MAKING THE CASE FOR A CASE STUDY

Introduction

This is a study of the jihad ideas of 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām. Born in Palestine in 1941 and having migrated to Jordan when his hometown was occupied by Israel during the 1967 Six-Day War, he was an influential and iconic figure in jihadist circles due to his role as the key mobiliser of foreign volunteers and fighters when the Soviet Union invaded Afghanistan in December 1979. He was assassinated in a bombing on November 24, 1989.

Despite his revered status and important contribution to militant jihad, there has not been much study done on him and no single work in English has hitherto been dedicated to studying his jihad ideas.¹

The emergence of jihadist terrorism as one of the major contemporary global security threats makes this study not only of academic value, but also of strategic and operational importance to the current offensive on terrorism. This study endeavours to provide a greater understanding of the threat of jihadism and the methods of its mitigation.

The study sets to achieve the following objectives:

- To provide an in-depth description of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas through a review of his ideological materials.

¹There is a Ph.D dissertation in Hebrew about 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām. The dissertation was submitted by Asaf Maliach and endorsed by Bar-Ilan University in Israel in May 2006. The dissertation’s title in English is 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām and the Ideological Origins of Usāma b. Lādīn’s Worldwide Islamic Terrorism. The dissertation was then largely used as basis for a book published in Hebrew in 2009. See Asaf Maliach and Sha’ul Shai, Mi Kabul li-Yerushalayim: al-Ka’idah, ha-q’ihad ha-Islami ha-’olami veha-’imut ha-Yisre’eli-Palæstini (From Kabul to Jerusalem: Al-Qa’idah, the Worldwide Islamic Jihad and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict), Tel Aviv: Matar Publishing House, 2009.
To identify aspects of `Azzám’s jihad ideas that has inspired many Muslims to participate in jihad in Afghanistan, and perhaps elsewhere.

To identify internal contradictions and inconsistencies in `Azzám’s jihad ideas and also those that conflict with contemporary jihadism, thereby gaining insights into the security ramifications of his jihad ideas.

To identify aspects of `Azzám’s jihad ideas and practices which could be used to counter contemporary jihadism.

The primary approach of this study is that of a qualitative literature review of `Abd Allâh `Azzám’s books, articles and transcripts of sermons and speeches. In analysing the text, the study applies Snow et. al.’s framing method, used in the study of social movements as the key analytical tool.

Upon reviewing all of `Azzám’s literature and other relevant published materials, the study concludes and makes three key arguments/observations on `Azzám’s jihad ideas. The first is `Azzám’s success in mobilising Muslims for jihad in Afghanistan was not due to his jihad ideas alone, although they mattered to him and were important tools of mobilisation. The study identifies two other non-ideational structural factors that were critical in effecting his mobilisation. These factors are: 1) precipitant events that provided justification for collective action frames and context for mobilisation, and 2) powerful allies that provided direct assistance for mobilisation or facilitated indirectly.

Secondly, there are two specific aspects of `Azzám’s jihad ideas which have serious implications on national security: 1) the duty to reclaim all past Muslim territories that are currently part of, or occupied by, non-Muslim states, and 2) the duty to wage jihād al-ṭalb (offensive jihad) against non-Muslim territories until they are either part of Dār Al-Islām or submit to the rule of Dār Al-Islām. The study explicates in detail how these two ideas could pose threats to state security.

Thirdly, some of `Azzám’s jihad ideas diverge from dominant ideas held by current jihadist groups like Al-Qaeda and these could potentially be used to counter
contemporary jihad ideas and practices of jihadists. The study identifies these as rather “positive” implications of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices because they could potentially be used to counter contemporary jihad ideas and practices of jihadists. Aspects of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices identified under this category are his opposition to acts of rebellion against Muslim rulers and prohibition of indiscriminate attacks, effecting attacks against the enemies outside conflict zones or in non-belligerent countries, and the use of terror tactics.

Based on the above findings, the study offers some recommendations that would contribute to the on-going counter-ideology work against jihadist groups.

Although the study of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas is significant to the understanding of contemporary jihadism, it must be highlighted at the onset that 'Azzām is just one of many other ideologues that have contributed to the shaping of contemporary jihadism. Thus, more studies like this should be undertaken on other ideologues to uncover more insights in aid of the ongoing counter-ideology work against extremism and terrorism.

This chapter will introduce the foundation of this study. It seeks to answer the question, “Why study 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām’s jihad ideas?” and demonstrate in detail the academic and practical value of this study. It will, 1) establish 'Azzām as a prominent figure worthy of academic research and how his jihad ideas and practices are relevant to the current challenges of terrorism; 2) highlight the contribution that this study can make towards the body of knowledge in this field; 3) identify the research framework used in this study to achieve the above set objectives; and 4) illustrate how the study will be conducted.

This chapter is divided into three sections: 1) background; 2) justification for studying 'Azzām; and 3) research plan.
The first section delineates the global security concern following the September 11, 2011 incident, prominently marking jihadism as the source of threat. Countering jihadism has thus become a significant endeavour.

The second section in the chapter proceeds with more background to the study. It is divided into two parts. The first highlights the important role played by the Soviet-Afghan war as the context that facilitated the emergence of 'Azzâm as a prominent jihad ideologue. The second part of this section accords an account of 'Azzâm’s life, and his role during the Soviet-Afghan war.

The third section illustrates how the study will be done. It defines the aim and objective of the study, its academic contribution, the methodology it uses, its unit of analysis, research questions, assumptions and structures. Likewise, the chapter elucidates and vindicates the use of Snow et al.’s framing model as an analytical tool in deconstructing 'Azzâm’s jihad ideas.

**Background to the Study**

*The threat of jihadist terrorism*

The most profound impact of the September 11 incident has been in the field of terrorism. Before the incident, terrorism was a local security concern, limited only to specific countries. However, September 11 elevated terrorism into a global security problem.

This change was due to the transnational character of the perpetrators and the extreme measures they were willing to take in waging wars against their enemies. These enemies are the US, a large number of European countries and leaders of most Muslim countries who they perceive are collaborating with or supporting a modern “crusade” against Muslims. Countries such as Russia, India, the Philippines, China and Thailand are also seen as being guilty of committing atrocities against their Muslim citizens.
September 11 directly and indirectly led to the proliferation of terrorism in many parts of the world when it exposed the vulnerabilities of the "enemy" and the impact that terrorism could have on a target country. Some examples are the Moscow theatre attack and Beslan hostage crisis.²

Widespread anger against the US-led military interventions in Afghanistan and Iraq in response to September 11 led some Muslims to embrace the cause propagated by the perpetrators of September 11, resulting in the attacks in Madrid, London, Istanbul, Bali, Jakarta, Casablanca, Amman and Riyadh, to name a few. Some attempts such as the Singapore Jemaah Islamiyah plot³, Richard Reid the "shoe bomber"⁴ and the José Padilla bomb making plan⁵ were successfully thwarted by the respective governments.

Conversely, September 11 led other terrorist groups to review their terror practices. The Irish Republican Army (IRA) for example has since discontinued the use of armed struggle.⁶ Indeed, with the initiatives taken against terrorism all over the world, some terrorist groups have been forced to cease operations so as to avoid being targeted and to ensure the survival of their respective causes.

Thus, the threat of terrorism today comes largely from a single source – jihadist groups.⁷ "Jihadist" refers to a person who subscribes to jihadism – an ideology that is committed to the establishment of an all-encompassing Islamic state so as to implement Islam as a way of life for all (Muslims and non-Muslims) through the violent dissolution of the existing international system.⁸

---
There are many jihadist groups that are operating in many parts of the world. Some are local in their characteristics and political objectives, while others are transnational. Al-Qaeda (also known in Arabic as Qā‘īdah Al-Jihād or Al-Qā‘īdah) is regarded, at the time of writing, as the number one enemy at the international level for its transnational character and its “success”, especially after September 11.9

Jihadists consider it obligatory to establish Islamic states governed by legitimate Muslim rulers, as a means to achieving an Islamic way of life.10 However, it is important to note that not everyone who subscribes to the idea of Islam and an Islamic way of life are jihadists. Many Muslims, or for that matter Islamists, have different ideological understandings of jihad and seek to achieve this vision through peaceful or democratic means.11

Jihadists hold the conviction that non-Muslims would never allow Muslims to live in peace and that armed jihad is the only means of attaining Islamic supremacy as pronounced by Usāmah ibn Lādin (a.k.a Bin Laden), “There is no way to obtain faithful strength but by returning to this jihad.”12 In fact, in today’s context, jihadist groups consider jihad as farḍ ‘āyn (personal obligation) upon all Muslims due to the occupation and transgression over all lands from Andalusia (Spain) to Mindanao (southern Philippines) that were previously part of the Islamic caliphate or under Muslim rule.

---

Jihad, they believe, has to continue until all these lands have been returned to the domain of Dār Al-Islam (Land of Islam).\textsuperscript{13}

In waging armed jihad against the enemy, jihadist groups argue that targeting civilians and non-combatants is justified for the following reasons:

1. To avenge the blood of Muslim civilians shed by the enemy;
2. Because civilians in enemy states are responsible for the acts of their government by virtue of their voting their leaders to power and paying taxes, which are used against Muslims;
3. It is a necessary or unavoidable evil for a greater good.\textsuperscript{14}

On the issue of suicide bombing, jihadist groups generally regard it as ‘amāfiyat istishhādiyyah – martyrdom operations – and not suicide. Al-Qaeda endorsement of martyrdom operations is clear, in both word and deed. Bin Laden specifically addresses this issue in one of his statements, “We stress the importance of the martyrdom operations against the enemy – operations that inflicted harm on the United States and Israel that have been unprecedented in their history, thanks to Almighty God.”\textsuperscript{15}


Jihadist groups also share some common perceptions. They see the world and world events in three ways: as binary views of “us versus them”, i.e., Dār Al-İslam (Land of Islam) versus Dār Al-Ḥarb (Land of War); as conspiracies against them and; through simplifications and generalisations.

On this binary view, Bin Laden expounds, “these incidents divide the world into two regions; one of faith where there is no hypocrisy and another of infidelity....”16 This binary view and its inherent hostility towards all non-Muslims poses a serious social problem in both Muslim and non-Muslim countries because it hampers peaceful and harmonious coexistence between Muslim and non-Muslim communities.

The perception of an alliance of Jews and Christians against Muslims is prevalent and continuously emphasised in rhetorical discourse. All Jews and Christians are viewed in a simplistic, one-dimensional way, neglecting the heterogeneity and pluralistic nature of each community.17

International institutions like the United Nations and its conventions are seen with cynicism and are believed to be part of the Crusader-Zionist conspiracy against Muslims. They are viewed as kufr (infidel) systems. In 2004, Bin Laden even offered a gold reward for the killing of the Secretary-General of the United Nations.18

Jason Burke has described Al-Qaeda as “less an organization than an ideology”19, a view that is shared by many other scholars.20 Al-Qaeda uses its ideology to attract followers

---

and win sympathy from Muslims. Al-Qaeda emphasises that it strives for Islam and represents true Islam by quoting verses from the Quran, Prophet Muhammad’s traditions (hadith) and opinions of classical Muslim scholars. It continuously uses fatwā (religious rulings) of various contemporary (and like-minded) Muslim scholars and would proffer its own opinion as fatwā for the Muslim ummah.21

Even after a leader of Al-Qaeda is killed or captured, the ideology lives on, continuing to lead many others to strive and be ready to replace the fallen leaders.22

The profiles of members of Al-Qaeda and the Al-Qaeda-linked Indonesian Jemaah Islamiyah23 also reveal that they are ideologically driven. Ayman Al-Zawahiri, Al-Qaeda’s deputy leader, was a physician. Khalid Shaykh Muhammad, head of Al-Qaeda’s operations, obtained an engineering degree from an American university. Azahari Husin, the Jemaah Islamiyah bomb expert killed by Indonesian’s anti-terrorism unit, had a doctoral degree from Britain’s University of Reading24, and was a lecturer at Universiti Teknologi Malaysia (University of Technology Malaysia). At least two of the Jemaah Islamiyah members detained in Singapore had diplomas in engineering.25 Jason Burke describes these jihadists as “intellectual activists”; “men who can justify their attraction

20 Meshal and Rosenthal, “Al-Qaeda as a Dune Organization,” Studies in Conflict & Terrorism, 290; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 170; Desai, Rethinking Islamism, viii; Protecting Australia Against Terrorism, (Canberra: The Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet, 2006), 8.
to radical Islam in relatively sophisticated terms."²⁶ This trend can also be found in many jihadist groups apart from Al-Qaeda and its sister organisations.²⁷

The current information and communication technology, the Internet in particular, has facilitated the dissemination and accessibility of jihadism to youths who are increasingly frustrated with world events. Increasingly, individuals have collaborated on acts of terrorism on an ad hoc basis such as in Madrid on 11 March 2004, in London on 7 July and 21 July 2005, the attempted car bombing attacks in London on 29 June 2007 and Glasgow International Airport on 30 June 2007. On 2 June 2007, Singaporean authorities announced the arrest of a Singaporean who was on route to Afghanistan to participate in jihad against the coalition forces after he was influenced by radical ideas via the Internet.²⁸

The importance of counter-ideology

The ideology of jihadist terrorism has been central in two ways. Firstly, it has provided a clear vision and a set of objectives for the existence of the jihadist group. Secondly, the ideology has legitimised acts of terrorism, and has become a means of gaining sympathy and support for their continued struggle. The centrality of jihadist ideology within these groups has led many to argue that the key in defeating it is in formulating a counter-ideology.

²⁶Burke, Al-Qaeda, 281.
Stephen Biddle has asserted that the real enemy in the war against terrorism is Al-Qaeda’s radical ideology. Countering jihadist terrorism requires the means to incarcerate the jihadists and the formulation of ideas to rehabilitate them or prevent the spread of radical ideas among Muslims. He is convinced that the key in the war against terrorism is to win over the hearts and minds of the politically uncommitted Muslims. The battle against jihadist groups themselves has become increasingly complex as the ideology has taken on a trans-national flavour and motivates individuals with little or no allegiance to any particular group to take up the call for armed jihad and perpetrate terrorist acts.

Counter-ideology should be undertaken for the following reasons:

1. To immunise general Muslims against the ideology.
2. To persuade less fanatic members of terrorist groups to abandon the ideology.
3. To create doubts and dissension within the terrorist organisation.
4. To rehabilitate detained terrorist members.
5. To present alternatives to terrorist ideology so as to minimise and alleviate conflicts between Muslims and non-Muslims that may be exploited by the jihadist.

Unless the ideology is defeated, counter-terrorism will fail because the ideology will help the group to be replenished with new recruits or inspire others take their initiatives.

The first step to countering the ideology is to understand the main ideas of the jihadist groups, especially Al-Qaeda and its regional affiliates like Jemaah Islamiyah.

---


Sun Tzu wrote, "Know yourself and know your enemy". Clear understanding of the ideology would also help to better identify the characteristics of these groups. To facilitate the mapping of these ideas, serious efforts should be put in place to collate and compile materials produced by the jihadists themselves. Naturally, studies on the key ideologues that shape jihadism have to be carried out also.  

**A Case for a Case Study**

While scholars regarded 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām as one of the contemporary key ideologues and advocates of armed jihad, there has been a dearth of scholarly studies specifically on 'Azzām’s jihad ideology. Searches made at prominent dissertation databases covering major universities in the US, UK and Australia has not produced a single study specifically focused on 'Azzām.  

This section seeks to demonstrate the important role that 'Azzām had played in the development of jihadism. The section is divided into two. The first places us during the Soviet-Afghan war which is the context within which 'Azzām emerged as a prominent jihad ideologue. The second part of this section gives a biographical account of 'Azzām’s life, and his role during the Soviet-Afghan war.

*The important role of the Soviet-Afghan war*

Jihadist terrorism is not a post-September 11 phenomenon. Egypt has been experiencing jihadist terrorism since late 1960s. Algeria also has a similar experience since the early 1990s after the military launched a coup against the Islamic party which had won the general election. Some Palestinian groups also use terrorism in their struggle against Israel. However, these activities had been largely local phenomenon.

---


33 See note 1 of this chapter.
The ideology of jihadist groups developed partly as a result of Islamic revivalism experienced since the early 20th century. Individuals like Jamāl Al-Din Al-Afghānī, Muḥammad Ḥādhib Aḥūd and Rashīd Riḍā have had tremendous influence.

Their efforts were later continued by Ḥasan Al-Bannā, the founder, in 1928, of the Muslim Brothers which has been regarded as the largest Muslim revivalist movement. The Jamaat Islami movement founded by Abū Al-A’mālu Al-Mawḍūdiy has had a significant presence and influence in the Indian sub-continent and in Islamic movements in the West founded by revivalist Muslims from the sub-continent.

In Egypt, the anti-colonial teachings of Al-Bannā and the Muslim Brothers drew harsh suppression from the ruling regime. Al-Bannā himself was assassinated while many of his followers and other activists were arrested and brutally tortured. The extent of the brutality left such deep hatred and vengeance in the hearts and minds of the detainees that they became even more determined to resist the regime through even more radical means. The ideas which fermented in these prison experiences were propagated by those who were released from detention. One of these important figures, Sayyid Qutb, published

\[13\] It must be noted that putting Al-Afghānī and Ḥādhib Aḥūd within the context of the development of jihadism here does not imply a causal link. They are included in the chain of development because the reform spirit that they propagated had tremendous impact on Muslim movements in the 20th century. Their call for reform spurred Muslim activists to revive the ummah from decadence by returning to the religion’s original sources — a mission shared by jihadists, albeit with some differences. The jihadists believe that Muslims can only bring back their past glory by strictly following the way of the early Muslims (salaf) and cleansing themselves from non-Muslim influences, whereas Al-Afghānī and Ḥādhib were open to learning from non-Muslims in facing modern challenges, despite their critique of the West. In fact, Al-Afghānī and Ḥādhib’s ideas, as a whole, are in contradiction to the jihadists’ to the extent that both men were branded by the militants as heretics. Ḥāddib was one of the harshest critics. He denounced and accused both of them of collaborating with western colonial to westernise Muslims. Ḥāddib claimed both were members of freemasonry which was a zionist cover. The merit of including Al-Afghānī and Ḥādhib in the chain here is that it provides the bigger picture and brings a point that influences that shape radicalism are not restricted to the radical domain.

Ma’ālim Fī Al-Ṭarīq (Milestones), which continues to be a manifesto for many extremist and jihadist groups.\textsuperscript{35}

Revivalism took on a new intensity at the end of 1960s and after 1973. In 1967, the Muslim world experienced extreme humiliation when Israel defeated Egyptian, Syrian and Jordanian forces during the Six Day War. Palestine, Sinai, the Golan Heights, West Bank and most importantly East Jerusalem, where the Al-Aqṣā Mosque is located, fell to Israel. This defeat was seen as proof of the failure of Arab socialist nationalism in safeguarding Muslim interests. The episode gave legitimacy to Muslim revivalist movements and many started looking towards Islam as the source of solutions for their problems. It was against this background that early jihadist groups emerged in Egypt.\textsuperscript{36}

The oil crisis of 1973 provided Muslim oil-producing countries with large financial gains which Saudi Arabia in particular used to propagate their brand of Islam all over the world and which concurrently heightened Islamic revivalism.\textsuperscript{37} This movement intensified in 1979 with the success of the Iranian revolution, under the leadership of Ayat Allāh Khumaynī (a.k.a Ayatollah Khomeini), against a tyrannical ruler supported by major powers. Analysts have suggested that the fear of the spread of Islamic revivalism in the energy-rich Muslim-dominated region of Central Asia may have motivated the Soviet Union to invade Afghanistan.\textsuperscript{38}

It has been argued that the Soviet-Afghan war which began in 1979 was responsible for the widespread proliferation of jihadism and its transformation to a transnational movement.\textsuperscript{39} David C. Rapoport, in describing what he calls the “religious wave” of


\textsuperscript{36} Gerges, Journey of the Jihadist, 11.

\textsuperscript{37} Desai, Rethinking Islamism, 29-30; Roshandal and Chadha, Jihad and Security, 13-4.


terrorism views the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979 as a “political turning point that was vital to launch the fourth [religious] wave”.40 The other two key events were the Iranian Revolution and the millennial expectations at the start of a new Islamic century. Mark Sedgwick, who takes a different approach in analysing the history of terrorism, classifies the Afghan Wave as the fourth distinctive wave of terrorism after the Italian, German and Chinese waves.41

The invasion of Afghanistan was regarded not only as an act of aggression against Afghan Muslims but also as a serious threat to other Muslim countries and Islam due to the atheist character of the invading country and its track record in oppressing Muslims. The invasion became a rallying call for jihad and Muslims all over the world were mobilised for financial support and to participate directly as fighters. Jihad in Afghanistan became a cause that all Muslims, whether moderate or radical, identified with.42

Tens of thousands of Muslims answered the call and joined the jihad in Afghanistan in the years after the invasion. Training camps, set up by various Muslim organisations, were constructed to host, train and indoctrinate them. Campaigns to support jihad in Afghanistan and the constant media coverage on it contributed in socialising the idea of armed jihad among Muslims. Those who volunteered became fascinated with armed jihad and embraced it as their way of life.43 They were rewarded when the Soviet Union withdrew from Afghanistan in 1989 and the Afghan communist regime fell in 1992. The experiences of these “Afghan alumni” reinforced their ideology and made their ideas more resilient.44 The cross-fertilisation of ideas and the proliferation of political Islam

44 Kepel, Political Islam, 9, 18, 219, 315.
among traditional Afghans, the people of the region and Muslims at large, evolved into jihadism and have had tremendous social and political impact in many parts of the world such as Palestine, Algeria and Sudan.\textsuperscript{45}

The formation of Hamas in the occupied territories of Palestine was inspired by the jihad in Afghanistan. 'Azzām, a Palestinian, was reported to have contributed directly to its formation. The battlefields of Afghanistan allowed many Hamas activists and other Palestinians to acquire military skills and real combat experiences that were not possible in the occupied territories. The widespread proliferation of political Islam contributed to the popularity of Hamas, propelled the Islamic party's win in Algeria's general election and facilitated the military coup in Sudan in 1989.\textsuperscript{46}

The fall of Kabul in 1992 also made many foreign fighters redundant and the subsequent civil wars between various Afghan factions caused many of them to leave the country. However, many of them could not return to their country of origin for fear of arrest and persecution. Others wanted to continue their jihad adventure elsewhere. The dispersal of these battle-hardened and jihad-indoctrinated fighters contributed to the proliferation of political violence in places like Bosnia, Chechnya, Algeria, Somalia, Sudan, Central Asia and Kashmir.\textsuperscript{47}

The end of the Soviet-Afghan war also contributed to the existence of a small but significant mass of Muslims who were available for military recruitment.\textsuperscript{48}

\textsuperscript{46}Ibid, 9.
The confidence gained from the successful jihad against a superpower also redirected the target of jihad. Before the defeat of the Soviet Union in Afghanistan, the jihadist groups were more concerned with waging jihad against the “near enemies”, which were the local regimes, they viewed as corrupt, ruling Muslim countries. Since the near enemy’s survival depended on support from the “far enemy”, namely the United States, it would be more effective – and economical – for them to confront the “far enemy”. They hope that its defeat will cause the subsequent collapse of the “near enemy”, just like the defeat of the Soviet Union. This was compounded by the continuous presence of the United States’ military forces in Saudi Arabia which Bin Laden wanted to be freed of infidels. This subsequently led to the occurrence of jihadist terrorism against the interests of the “far enemy” such as the attack on the USS Cole in Yemen and the bombings in Africa, Riyadh and Bali.\(^4^9\)

Thus, jihad in Afghanistan contributed directly to the emergence of prominent individuals and groups promoting and practicing jihadism. Among the individuals were Bin Laden, head of Al-Qaeda and his deputy Aymān Al-Zawahirīy, leader of foreign fighters in Chechnya Ibn Al-Khaṭṭāb, and operational head of the first Bali bombing Imam Samudra. The prominent groups are Al-Qaeda, Taliban, Abū Sayyāf in southern Philippines and Jemaah Islamiyah in Indonesia.\(^5^0\)

Like any other conflict, war in Afghanistan gave rise to millions of refugees and orphans, precipitating a humanitarian crisis. Most of the refugees were concentrated along the Afghan-Pakistan border. The magnitude of the crisis invited humanitarian assistance in the form of education for Afghan children and orphans. Madrasah (Islamic schools) mushroomed in the border areas. From these madrasah, emerged the Taliban (literally, ‘students’) who were responsible for much of the current threat of jihadist terrorism.

---


It was during the Taliban’s rule of Afghanistan that Al-Qaeda, under the leadership of Bin Laden, had a safe haven to train its fighters and to plan and execute terrorist attacks including the September 11 incident. Most of terrorist attacks after September 11 were also committed by Al-Qaeda.\footnote{Ibid, 136, 161-3, 155-8; Rashid, Taliban, viii; Al-Zayyat, The Road to Al-Qaeda, 11, 52, 59; Peter Brooks, A Devil’s Triangle: Terrorism, Weapons of Mass Destruction and Rogue State, (New York: Rowman & Littlefield, 2005), 77-8; Amanat, “Empowerment Through Violence,” 37-9; Hut, “In the Wake of Sep. 11,” 78; C. Raja Mohan, “Catharsis and Catalysis; Transferring the South Asian Subcontinent,” Attacking Terrorism, Audrey Kurth et al., eds. (Washington: Georgetown University Press, 2004), 206-20; Tim Dunne, World in Collision, (New York: Palgrave, 2002), 32; Roshandal and Chadha, Jihad and Security, 8-9.}

‘Abd Allah ‘Azzām: His life and role during the Soviet-Afghan War

As indicated in the preceding section, the Soviet-Afghan conflict captured the imagination of the entire Muslim world. Against this backdrop, ‘Azzām, whose jihad ideas are the subject of this study, emerged as the key protagonist. Rationalising this process of emergence, which this section seeks to address, requires the exposition of significant aspects of his past.

‘Abd Allāh Yūsuf ‘Azzām (1941–1989) was born to Al-Ḥāj Yūsuf Muṣṭafā ‘Azzām and Ṣāliḥ Husayn Al-Ḥāmid in a neighborhood known as Ḥārat Al-Shawāhīnah within Sāilat Al-Ḥārithīyah village in the Jenin district of central north Palestine. Today, it is located within the West Bank territory occupied by Israel. His mother died in 1988 and his father in 1990.

‘Azzām was known to be an intelligent student and a pious child with an innately serious disposition. He participated in proselytising activities and joined the Muslim Brothers before he had even come of age. Even at a young age, ‘Azzām’s intelligence shone brightly and he excelled so much that the leader of the Muslim Brothers in Jordan constantly visited the village to keep abreast of ‘Azzām’s development.
'Azzām attended elementary and secondary schools in his village. He then continued his education at Khadhūriyyah Agricultural College in Tulkarem, where he obtained a diploma with distinction.

Upon graduating from college, 'Azzām embarked on a teaching career. Due to differences between 'Azzām and the dean of the college, he was posted far away to a village named Adr in the Kirk district of Jordan. A year later, he was transferred to another school in West Bank. Because of his qualifications, 'Azzām was also an agricultural supervisor in the village where he lived. 52

In 1965, 'Azzām married a girl from Tulkarem whose father was a close family friend. He was blessed with five sons and three daughters from this marriage. 53

'Azzām had a strong religious disposition and was passionate about shari'ah (Islamic law). He enrolled himself into the Faculty of Shari'ah in Damascus University where he earned his first degree in shari'ah in 1966.

His unwavering religious outlook during his study in Damascus brought him into contact with many Muslim scholars and leaders of the Islamic movement in the Levant (Syria) such as Dr. Muhammad Adib Al-Šalih, Shaykh Sa'īd Hawwa and Dr. Sa'īd Ramadān Al-Buṭiyy who were all prominent leaders of the Muslim Brothers in Syria, and Mullā

19

Ramaḍān who was a distinguished scholar of the Shāfi‘ī school of jurisprudence in the Levant. ‘Aẓẓām also read the works of Hasan Al-Banna and Sayyid Qutb.

Upon graduation, ‘Aẓẓām returned to the West Bank, but this turned out to be a short stay. In 1967, the West Bank was invaded and captured by Israel during the Six-Day War. ‘Aẓẓām was determined to resist the occupation but the village elders prevented him for fear of their life and property. Unable to accept the fall of his birthplace and life under the occupation of Israel, ‘Aẓẓām migrated to Jordan where he became a teacher in Al-Tāj secondary school for girls.

He travelled to Saudi Arabia to work as teacher there in 1968 but returned back to Amman a year later.

From Amman, ‘Aẓẓām actively resisted the occupation in Palestine. He trained himself in weaponry and organised a group of youths after consulting with the Islamic movements in Jordan. He joined like-minded Islamic resistance groups at the Al-Shuyūkh base and also helped to train fighters under the leadership of Marwān Ḥādīd, who opposed the Syrian government. ‘Aẓẓām became the commander of the Bayt Al-Maqdis base.54

‘Aẓẓām’s exploits eventually received the attention of the Israeli forces that occupied the West Bank. His father was reported to have said that the occupying forces offered money for him to dissuade ‘Aẓẓām from continuing his resistance. When this failed, they employed more aggressive methods and unsuccessfully urged ‘Aẓẓām’s father to lure him to Palestine.55

‘Azzam’s involvement in resistance operations did not stop him from continuing his religious education. He enrolled, and later graduated at, Al-Azhar University’s Master program in sharī’ah. In June 1970, rebellion by the Palestinian resistance groups erupted against the Jordanian government. After months of fighting, Jordanian armed forces expelled these Palestinian resistance groups. When armed resistance activities in Jordan against Israel were subsequently banned, ‘Azzam’s jihad activities were seriously curtailed. He became disillusioned when he found that the members of the resistance movements were not performing their obligations as Muslims, committed acts which were forbidden in Islam and were influenced by leftist ideology. His efforts in promoting Islam among the fighters were resisted and the last straw came when a Palestinian fighter told him that Fatah – the main faction within the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) – has no religion behind it. ‘Azzam ceased his involvement in Palestinian armed resistance activities and took up teaching again as a lecturer at the Jordan University in Amman. In 1971, he pursued a PhD at Al-Azhar University and graduated in 1973 with a doctorate in Uṣūl Al-Fiqh (Principles of Islamic Jurisprudence).

While in Cairo, ‘Azzam got acquainted with the family of the late Sayyid Qutb, who had a tremendous influence on him. ‘Azzam was reported to have said, “Four people influenced me in my life; Ibn Taymiyyah on creed and theology, Ibn Al-Qayyim on etiquette, Al-Nawawī on jurisprudence and Sayyid Qutb on worldview.”

After completing his PhD in Cairo, ‘Azzam returned to Jordan University and had a short stint with the Jordanian Ministry of Religious Affairs and Endowment. He later joined the Shari’ah Faculty at Jordan University where he became involved in Islamic movement

activities. His outspoken manner in criticizing the Jordanian government got him expelled from the university in 1979.60

He left for Saudi Arabia and was soon teaching at King 'Abd Al-’Aziz University.61 It was in Saudi, in the grand mosque of Mecca, that 'Azzam met with Kamal Al-Sananiyi, an Egyptian member of the Muslim Brothers and the brother-in-law of Sayyid Qutb. Al-Sananiyi was on his way to survey the situation in Afghanistan and organise assistance for the Afghan fighters on a full-time basis. He urged 'Azzam to join his mission and take up a similar path.62 Although Al-Sananiyi was arrested in 1981 by the Egyptian authority and subsequently died in prison, his role in persuading 'Azzam proved to be a significant turning point in mobilising Muslims for jihad in Afghanistan.63

'Azzam soon made arrangements to fulfil his mission. In 1984, he joined the International Islamic University in Islamabad, Pakistan as a lecturer. It was reported that he got himself seconded from King 'Abd Al-Aziz University to the university,64 so he could be closer to Afghanistan. There he became acquainted with the leaders of the Afghan resistance groups. In 1986, when his teaching contract expired and was not renewed by the Saudi university, 'Azzam decided to take up jihad in Afghanistan as his full-time profession.

To facilitate his mission, he relocated to Peshawar, a town in the Northwest Frontier Province of Pakistan, closer to the border of Afghanistan and where most Afghan fighters groups were based.65

'Azzām was responsible for mobilising Muslims for the jihad in Afghanistan. He travelled all over the world highlighting that the problems in Afghanistan were that of the whole Muslim ummah as well. In his tours, he raised the Muslims awareness about jihad and encouraged them to join the fight. Thousands of Muslims answered his call to jihad. 66

In describing 'Azzām, Chris A. Suellentrop wrote:

“Political Islam's Great Communicator and traveling salesman, Azzam trotted the globe during the 1980s to promote the Afghan jihad against the Soviets. By the time of his death in 1989, he had recruited between 16,000 and 20,000 mujahideen from 20 countries to Afghanistan, visited 50 American cities to advance his cause, and dispatched acolytes to spread the gospel in 26 U.S. states, not to mention across the Middle East and Europe.” 67

'Azām frequently travelled to Afghanistan to motivate the fighters in the frontlines, get updates and understand the conditions inside the country. He travelled to the mountainous region of Hindukush and lived for a month with Aḥmad Shah Masʿūd, the famous Afghan commander known as the Lion of Panjsher, and wrote a special book about his experience with him.

It was reported that after resigning from the International Islamic University in Islamabad, 'Azzām worked for a Saudi-based organisation, Rabitat Al-Ālam Al-Islāmiy

(Muslim World League). He ran its aid operations that provided financial assistance to the Afghan people in Pakistan.68

Later, he founded his own independent aid agency known as Maktab Al-Khidmat Li Al-Mujahidin (Office for Mujahidin Services). The aid agency was a front for other activities such as creating awareness and support for jihad in Afghanistan, and providing services for the foreign volunteers in Afghanistan. The agency had a sister agency and affiliate in the United States known as Al-Kifah Afghan Refugee Centre in Brooklyn. It was from this set up that a core group of individuals under the leadership of Bin Laden emerged, and later formed what is known today as Qa'idat Al-Jihad or Al-Qaeda.69

'Azzām used the media to spread his campaign for jihad in Afghanistan. He wrote books about Afghanistan. Three of his most important works are Al-Dīfā‘ 'An Araḍī Al-Muslimūn (Defence of the Muslim Lands), Ilḥaq Bī Al-Qā‘īlah (Join the Caravan) and Ayāt Al-Rahmān Fī Jihad Al-Afghān (The Signs of Al-Rahmaan in the Jihad of the Afghan). These books were widely distributed and translated into various languages. His book Defence of the Muslim Lands was endorsed by many Muslim scholars at that time such as 'Abd Al-'Azīz ibn Bāz, the Grand Mufti of Saudi Arabia; Muḥammad Najīb Al-Mu‘ṭīy, a renowned Egyptian scholar; Sa‘īd Ḥawwā, a leader of the Syrian Muslim Brothers; 'Umar Sayyāf, Grand Chair of the ‘Ulamā‘ in Sanā‘a, Yemen; and ‘Abd Allāh Nāṣīh Al-Ulāwān, a professor in Jeddah.70


He also published an Arabic monthly magazine, *Al-Jīhād*, with the primary objective of disseminating news and developments in the armed operations of Afghan and foreign fighters. The magazine was distributed to many Muslim countries. A weekly newsletter *Lahlīb Al-Ma‘rakah* (In the Heat of Battle) was published to meet readers’ demand for quick updates from Afghanistan. These publications played significant roles in creating jihad awareness, mobilising support and recruiting volunteers. Maktab Al-Khidmāt also internationally distributed hundreds of cassettes containing ‘Azzām’s sermons, speeches, and videos of jihad operations in Afghanistan. These materials were freely copied and redistributed again. All these efforts helped to finance and recruit volunteers for his campaign.⁷¹

‘Azzām also commissioned the 11-volume *Mawsū‘at Al-Jīhād Al-Afghānīyy* (The Encyclopedia of the Afghan Jihad), but was unable to witness its completion. The encyclopedia became an important training manual for jihadists.⁷²

Among the important individuals who were recruited into jihad in Afghanistan through ‘Azzām’s efforts was Bin Laden, the son of a wealthy Saudi building contractor who later inherited a fortune after his father’s death. Bin Laden reportedly had his first contact with ‘Azzām when he studied in the same university in Jeddah where ‘Azzām was a lecturer. Later, Bin Laden joined ‘Azzām in Peshawar for a short period before returning to Saudi Arabia. After making some preparation and arrangement, Bin Laden travelled again to Peshawar to dedicate himself fully to jihad, just like ‘Azzām.
In the beginning, the relationship between 'Azzām and Bin Laden was excellent. Bin Laden benefited from 'Azzām’s spiritual guidance and ideological indoctrination and 'Azzām benefited from Bin Laden’s strong financial assistance that poured into his agency Maktab Al-Khidmāt.

After a few years, there were disagreements on the management of foreign volunteers, the use of aid resources and the employment of battle tactics. 'Azzām felt that the foreign volunteers should not operate independently from local Afghan jihad organisations, commanders and fronts. He also considered that the money and materials donated by Muslims all over the world for jihad in Afghanistan should only be used for the intended purpose and cannot be diverted for jihad in other places. Furthermore, the gravity of the situation in Afghanistan necessitated that priorities for jihad be given to Afghanistan. 'Azzām believed that all Muslims must join jihad in Afghanistan unless they were already in Palestine. 'Azzām was also against the indiscriminate killings of innocent lives practiced by the Egyptian groups. 73

Bin Laden, however, wanted to run his jihad operations independently. This was partly due to prevalent views among Arabs volunteers that the Afghans were inferior to the Arabs in religious disposition and character. His close association with leaders of Egyptian groups led by Ayman Al-Zawahiri had also led him to channel some of the resources for jihad to Egypt. This implicitly endorsed the tactics already used there. In 1986, Bin Laden left Maktab Al-Khidmāt and stopped his financial assistance. He set up his own guesthouses for foreign volunteers, training camps and fronts. Both 'Azzām and Bin Laden, however, maintained a cordial relationship and mutual respect for one another. At a later period, Bin Laden reportedly sided with Hekmatyar, a leader of an Afghan fighting group known as Hezb Islami, against Ahmad Shāh Mas’ūd, a prominent

field commander of the Afghan Jamaat Islami group who was popularly known as the Lion of Panjshir Valley, while ‘Azzām’s position was to mediate between them.74

‘Azzām’s efforts for jihad in Afghanistan were not without criticism. Some criticised him for highlighting only the positive aspects of jihad in Afghanistan in order to recruit volunteers and supports. His fellow Palestinians criticised him for giving priority to jihad in Afghanistan instead of Palestine. Others felt that the Afghans needed material support rather than more manpower.75

Although ‘Azzām was busy with jihad in Afghanistan, he did not forget his homeland, Palestine. He constantly reminded Muslims about the obligation of jihad in Palestine. He kept himself updated with the developments there and used his work to build networks with the Palestinian Islamic groups. He trained members of the Palestinian Islamic groups in Afghanistan with the clear objective that they would be fighting for Palestine. He helped to found Hamās, which later become a potent Islamic resistance front against the Israeli occupying forces and one of many platforms that promoted jihad awareness among Muslims all over the world.76

‘Azzām also played an important role in maintaining unity among various Afghan groups. He often mediated between the Afghan groups as most Afghan leaders respected his status as a scholar, foreign volunteer and for the assistance that he provided.77

Naturally, the prominent role played by ‘Azzām made him a target for assassination. He escaped at least one attempt on his life at a mosque frequented by Afghan Arabs where an


Coll, Ghost Wars, 202-4; Rashid, Taliban, 131-2.


anti-tank mine rigged with 2 kilograms of TNT was found and defused. It was planted under the pulpit of the mosque from which 'Azām was to deliver a Friday sermon few weeks before his assassination. In November 24, 1989, however, his enemy got him. He was killed with two of his sons, Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, and the son of his best friend Shaykh Tamīm Al-'Adnāni, who was the manager at Maktab Al-Khidmāt, while they were on their way to Sabī Al-Layl mosque for Friday prayer. 'Azām was driving his car in a congested lane when few bombs were detonated.\(^78\)

Until now, there has not been any conclusive evidence pinpointing the perpetrator behind the assassination. The list of suspects includes, 1) the United States who feared that 'Azām’s jihad ideology and anti-Americanism threatened its interests; 2) Israel’s Mossad because of 'Azām’s influence on Ḥamās; 3) the Soviet Union because of 'Azām’s role in Afghanistan; 4) Pakistan’s security services; 5) Afghan communist factions; 6) Iran or Shi’ite (Shī‘ah) communities; 7) Other Afghan Arabs who had ideological differences with 'Azām and saw him as a stumbling block to their future ambitions. There were also those who accused 'Azām of being a CIA agent which made him an apostate for collaborating with the non-Muslim enemy and, thus, a legitimate target.\(^79\)

To conclude, 'Azām’s role during the Soviet-Afghan war period had tremendous contributions to the current state of national and international security, and can be described thus:

1. A jihad advocate who raised jihad awareness among Muslims all over the world and rallied them to participate and support jihad in Afghanistan.


2. A commander for foreign volunteers in Afghanistan, training them for jihad and deploying them to various fronts.

3. An ideologue who constructed jihad ideology to mobilise Muslims and indoctrinate fighters.

4. The founder of Maktab Al-Khidmāt which, whether intended or not, later transformed into Al-Qaeda.

5. A mentor to Bin Laden who went on to become the leader of Al-Qaeda, the leading jihadist organisation today.80

Although there were other individuals such as scholars and preachers who contributed to jihad in Afghanistan, none of them could compare to the roles that 'Azzām played.81

'Azzām left behind ideological legacies in jihad books, articles and audio cassette materials. Some of his cassettes have been transcribed into reading material for publication and distribution, and many of these are available online.

'Azzām also left behind an institutional legacy, the Maktab Al-Khidmāt, including its networks of support, thousands of trained and battle-hardened fighters and thousands more of ordinary Muslims who were sympathetic to his idea and ever willing to offer their support.82

Unfortunately, his intellectual legacies have been manipulated to promote jihadism that has led to the September 11 incident.

'Azzām's biography has raised a few interesting issues for research, one of which is the differences which he had with Bin Laden and other key players during the Afghan jihad


period. These differences had been raised by academicians and individuals who were involved in jihad during the same period, and can also be found in 'Azzám’s works. The questions of whether Al-Qaeda and other jihadist organisations today are based on 'Azzám’s jihad construct, have “deviated” from it or mutated into more radical forms, have not been sufficiently studied and explored.

The period of dormancy, as far as armed jihad activities in 'Azzám’s life are concerned, also raises the question of whether 'Azzám was really a hardcore jihadist. There are no reports or evidence that 'Azzám, while he was studying in Egypt, was involved in jihadist organisations like the Egyptian Al-Jamā’ah Al-Islāmīyah and Al-Jīhād, which waged armed jihad against the Egyptian authority. 'Azzám was distinctly different from the general trend of known jihadists who constantly looked for jihad fronts and, for that matter, Al-Qaeda, which not only looks for jihad fronts but also strives to create new ones.

'Azzám’s exploits were conducted within the context of the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan, justifying armed resistance under international law and defensive jihad under Islamic jurisprudence. This raises the issue of dynamic relations between the context and 'Azzám’s idea of jihad. The question of the extent to which the strategic context influenced 'Azzám’s idea of jihad, whether 'Azzám’s idea of jihad was constructed independently or that both were inter-related, could raise different research hypotheses and have different theoretical and policy impacts on how jihadist terrorism should be countered.

The issues raised above makes 'Azzám a compelling research subject, particularly, for counter-jihadism work. Two particular issues are of interest:

1. Sustained counter-jihadism work requires deep understanding of the ideology and the ideologues of jihadist groups. Because 'Azzám is regarded as the person responsible for the initial construction of the modern jihad idea, it is logical, then, to study his jihad construct and its possible impact on national security so as to provide better
understanding of the current jihadism trend and to inform more effective counter-ideology work.

2. Since ‘Azzām continues to be revered within the jihadist fraternity, an in-depth study of his jihad construct and the ideological differences that he had with Bin Laden could provide insights, together with the traditional Islamic jurisprudence, on the deviationist tendency of Al-Qaeda, such an approach could potentially minimise its appeal and subsequently its threat.

Despite his prominent role, ‘Azzām remains an understudied jihad ideologue, with only minimal references made to him in books or articles on terrorism, Muslim extremism or political Islam. Only three articles so far have been focused on ‘Azzām.

One, by Andrew McGregor, entitled “Jihad and the Rifle Alone: Abdullah Azzam and the Islamist Revolution”, was published in Conflict Studies Journal in Fall, 2003. The second article entitled “Abdallah Azzam” was written in French by Thomas Hegghammer as a chapter in Al-Qaida dans le texte: Ecrits d’Ousama ben Laden, Abdallah Azzam, Ayman al-Zawahiri et Abou Moussab al-Zarqawi (Al-Qaeda and the Text: The Writing of Usamah ibn Ladin, ’Abd Allah ‘Azzam, Ayman Al-Zawahiri and Abū Muṣʿab Al-Zarqāwī) edited by Gilles Kepel. The book was published in 2005 by Presses Universitaires de France, and has been translated into English by Pascale Ghazaleh and published under the title Al-Qaeda in Its Own Words. The third article, entitled “The Striving Shaykh: Abdullah Azzam and the Revival of Jihad” by John C. M. Calvert, was published in the Journal of Religion & Society (Supplement Series 2) in 2007. The writer in this article admitted, “there is presently no full critical biography of Abdullah Azzam” and that “a rudimentary account of his life can be assembled from the largely hagiographical portraits that his followers posted on the internet beginning in the

---

83 See note 1 of this chapter.
late 1990s”, which nonetheless had been used by some writers in short articles about 'Azzâm.\(^{86}\)

McGregor’s article describes 'Azzâm as “the most influential figure in modern times”, the man who “was responsible for internationalizing the Islamist struggle against secularism, socialism and materialism” and the founder of “the agency that would evolve into Osama bin Laden’s al-Qaeda”.\(^{87}\) In view of the eruption of jihad in many parts of the world, the article asserted that “it is important to understand the man whom so many mujahideen cite as their inspiration”\(^{88}\)

McGregor’s article illustrated 'Azzâm’s ideas and traced his thought through his most important influences so as to understand how “the Sheikh’s ideology transformed radical Islam from a group of disparate movements defined by national borders into a potent (if scattered) force in the international arena”.\(^{89}\) As the focus of the article was on 'Azzâm’s ideas on jihad, it did not provide much details on 'Azzâm’s biography. Where relevant, his biography was included in between descriptions of the ideas. A significant portion of the article illustrated the ideas of Sayyid Qutb, Ibn Taymiyah and Muḥammad 'Abd Al-Salām Faraj, from which 'Azzâm’s own ideas were shaped. The article also traced the roots of his ideas to Ḥasan Al-Bannā, Muḥammad 'Abdūh, and Al-Mawdūdī.\(^{90}\) Only about a third of the article dealt with 'Azzâm’s own ideas based, on his book Join the Caravan. The remainder was based on his article Martyrs the Building Blocks of Nations and 'Azzâm’s biography written by others.\(^{91}\)

Hegghammer’s chapter in Al-Qaida dans le texte attempted to present Al-Qaeda’s views based on excerpts of translated works and pronouncements made by individuals closely related to it i.e. Bin Laden, 'Abd Allāh 'Azzâm, Ayman Al-Zāwāhīrī and Abu Muḥ’ab Al-Zarqāwī. Hegghammer’s chapter on 'Azzâm begins with his biography and included

---

\(^{86}\) Calvert, “The Striving Shaykh.” 85.
\(^{87}\) McGregor, “Jihad and the Rifle Alone,” 92.
\(^{88}\) Ibid.
\(^{89}\) Ibid.
\(^{90}\) Ibid, 93-8.
\(^{91}\) Ibid, 99-108.
excerpts from three of 'Azzām’s works along with a letter to young Muslims of the United States.\textsuperscript{92}

Hegghammer again emphasised that “no serious biography of Abdallah Azzam [sic] has been published up till now... A certain number of biographies in English, which are short, incomplete and mediocre, are available on the Internet.”\textsuperscript{93}

Calvert’s article attempts to understand the dynamic relationship between Islam and violence and how Islam “whose doctrines were formulated in contexts of confrontation or political triumphalism” could be a source for activist to express “deeply held social and political aspirations” and mobilise resources “for many different kinds of activism, including nationalist, anti-colonial struggles or civilization confrontation”.\textsuperscript{94} Calvert explains his reasons for writing about 'Azzām:

“[‘Azzām] arguably did more than any other person to create the theoretical underpinnings of the contemporary Jihadist movements. Azzam formulated much of the Islamist ideology of war against the Soviets in Afghanistan, recruited Arab fighters to implement his vision of a reborn caliphate, and established the foundation for the international network that his disciple, Usama bin Laden, would inherit and turn into Al-Qaeda.”\textsuperscript{95}

“What I hope to make clear is that in reviving the classical doctrine of jihad, Azzam connected significant numbers of young Muslim men to paradigmatic moments of their past, which had the effect of both enhancing and directing their incentive to challenge forces seen as responsible for the decline of Muslim fortunes in the modern world.”\textsuperscript{96}

\textsuperscript{93}Ibid, notes 2, 294.
\textsuperscript{94}Calvert, “The Striving Shaykh,” 82-5.
\textsuperscript{95}Ibid, 85
\textsuperscript{96}Ibid.
Calvert then proceeds with 'Azzām's biography, which made up half of the article.97 The most significant part of the article describes 'Azzām’s jihad ideas which unfortunately cannot be said to be comprehensive.98 In the bibliography, the writer lists six of 'Azzām’s works (three books and three articles).99 But upon analysing the article, the bulk of Calvert’s description of the jihad ideas is based on only one of 'Azzām’s work, The Defense of the Muslim Lands. The section on jihad ideas was more descriptive than analytical, perhaps due to the limitations of space for an article in a journal.

There is thus much more that can be said about 'Azzām, something which this study seeks to achieve.

The Research Plan

This section will outline the research plan, aims, objectives and methodology of this research.

Despite the works on 'Azzām mentioned earlier, there is still more that needs to be studied on 'Azzām’s idea of jihad including tapping into a vast resource of Arabic literature. To date, there has not been any comprehensive description of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas written in English. An English language narrative on 'Azzām, based on Arabic sources, will enable scholars of various fields to make a more meaningful analysis.

Aim and objective

A PhD dissertation work on 'Azzām’s idea of jihad in English will be an invaluable contribution to academic fields such as security, terrorism, jihadism, Muslim radicalism and strategic studies.

The objective of this study has already been mentioned in the beginning of this chapter. In short, the study aims to establish a comprehensive view of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas based

---

98 Ibid, 92-97.
99 Ibid, 100.
on his writings and transcripts of his speeches and sermons, both published and unpublished, many of which have yet to be translated into other languages. The second aim is to offer analytical commentaries and insights from a security and theological perspective; and to extract key lessons for counter-ideology work within the framework of counter-terrorism.

What the study can offer
This study is significant, not only because of the important role that 'Azzām played in the Soviet-Afghan War and his contribution to jihadism, but also because:

1. It will help to foster a deeper appreciation of the ideological dimension within the context of the Soviet-Afghan war.
2. It will explain the dynamics mobilising the Muslims masses for the Soviet-Afghan war, which could provide a better understanding of contemporary jihadist groups and offer insights to counter them.
3. It will explore the implications of 'Azzām' jihad ideas from a contemporary security perspective, on state or international systems.

Methodology
The primary approach of this study is that of a qualitative literature review. 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām's books, articles and transcripts of sermons and speeches as listed in the bibliography have all been reviewed. Other related published and unpublished materials available in open sources, or online in print, video and audio have also been reviewed.

In analysing the text, the study applies the framing method, used in the study of social movements as the key analytical tool. The framing method is a "schemata of interpretation" that enables individuals "to locate, perceive, identify and label" occurrences within their life space and the world at large." A frame is thus an "interpretative schema that simplifies and condenses the 'world out there' by selectively punctuating and encoding objects, situations, events, experiences, and sequences of
action." The frame’s functions are “to organize experience and guide action, whether individual or collective.”

Gregory Bateson first used the concept of the frame in 1954 in an essay about epistemology and animal behaviour. This method has now been used in various fields such as linguistic studies, social psychology, media studies and policy studies. In sociology and political science, it is used inter-alia, to study social movements.

Erving Goffman has been regarded as the first person to introduce the concept into sociology in his study of everyday interaction and communicative acts. Later, it was introduced into the study of social movements by Todd Gitlin in his study of the media’s treatment of the Students for Democratic Society in the US in the 1960s. This was later reinforced by William Gamson, Bruce Fireman and Steven Rytina’s works that shifted the focus from media to political actors by examining how people constructed alternative explanations to events in relation to official versions.

Today, framing has become one of the key approaches underpinning cultural perspectives to the study of social movements.

Framing has become increasingly important in the study of social movements “because of its potential to provide insight into the various forms of interpretation that are parts of the


dynamics of social movement.”¹⁰⁴ It brings in socio-psychological dimensions to the study and the role of human agency in the rise of social movements. Framing allows researchers to understand how individuals are transformed from bystanders to participants in collective action through the interpretation of political issues and the use of culture, religion and ideology in negotiating meaning within a political context. It helps researchers to understand how social entrepreneurs use meanings to mobilise people in order to achieve political objectives. It also allows the understanding of the content of the idea and the processes taken to construct it concurrently.¹⁰⁵

There are various models of framing in the study of social movements. This research has adopted Snow et al.’s model of framing. Unlike other models, this model focuses on the strategic level in which social movement entrepreneurs operate. Social movement entrepreneurs are “people who exhibit strategic initiative in spreading the word about their cause and promoting its message” whose primary role is “to communicate the movement’s frame to current and potential constituents.”¹⁰⁶ This is very relevant to the study because social entrepreneur fits `Abd Allâh ’Azzâm Azzâm’s role as jihad mobiliser during the Soviet-Afghan war period.

The central idea of framing under Snow et al.’s model is the concept of collective action frames.¹⁰⁷ Collective action frames are “action-oriented sets of beliefs and meanings that inspire and legitimise the activities and campaigns of a social movement organization (SMO)”¹⁰⁸ or, in other words, collective action frames are interpretations of issues by the social movement entrepreneurs that are intended to mobilise people to act.¹⁰⁹ Collective action frames have three basic tasks:

1. Diagnostic framing. Its function is to provide interpretation of issues and events to the targeted audience. It basically tells us what is wrong, and why.

¹⁰⁵ Ibid, 3-5, 7; Oliver and Johnston, “What a Good Idea!”
¹⁰⁶ Ibid, 7-8.
¹⁰⁷ Ibid, 5, 11.
¹⁰⁸ Snow and Benford, “Framing Process and Social Movements,” 614.
2. Prognostic framing. This frame offers solutions highlighted in the diagnostic frame.
3. Motivational framing. This frame provides people with reasons to join collective action to effect the solutions and overcome the problems.110

As frames in social movements have been constructed with the objective of mobilising people to effect change, they must resonate well with the target audience. Frame resonance is, thus, essential in the study of frames. Snow et al. use the term “frame alignment”, which refers to “the linkage of individual and SMO interpretive orientations, such that some set of individual interests, values and beliefs and SMO activities, goal, and ideology are congruent and complementary.”111

Under this model, the effectiveness of framing judged by its resonance to the target audience, requires the examination of six alignment processes:

1. Frame consistency. This refers to the frame’s logical complementariness in its different aspects, i.e. tactics, diagnosis, prognosis, core values and beliefs.
2. Empirical credibility. This is to ascertain whether the frame makes sense to the target audience’s view of the world or event.
3. Credibility of the frame’s promoters. This holds the view that credibility of the promoters has significant persuasive power and affects the resonance of the frame.
4. Experiential commensurability. This is to examine the congruency of the frame with the target audience’s daily experiences.
5. Centrality. This holds the view that the more central the core values and beliefs articulated by the frames to the lives of the target audience, the more they resonate with them.
6. Narrative fidelity. This refers to how the frame resonates well with the dominant culture of the target audience, its narratives, myths and basic assumptions.112

110Ibid, 5-6; Snow and Benford, “Framing Process and Social Movements,” 614-8.
The model also proposes four strategies for effective resonance of the frames which Snow et al. call frame alignment processes:

1. Frame bridging. This occurs when two or more frames that have an affinity but were previously unconnected are linked, e.g. Islam + Politics = Political Islam.

2. Frame amplification. This involves highlighting some issues, events, beliefs or values as being more salient than others. It is usually manifested in catchphrases or slogans, e.g. “Islam is the solution”. This can be done by value amplification, which is “the identification of, idealisation and elevation of one or more values presumed basic to prospective constituents but which have not inspired collective action for any number of reasons”; or belief amplification. The former refers to “the goals or end-states that movements seek to attain or promote” and the latter refers to the “ideational element that cognitively support or impede action in pursuit of desired values.”

3. Frame extension. This occurs when the frame is extended beyond the social movements’ interest to areas that are presented to be of importance to the target audience.

4. Frame transformation. This refers to “changing old understandings and meanings and/or generating new ones” to generate support and mobilise the target audiences. This occurs when the programs and values promoted by social movements “may not resonate with, and on occasion may even appear antithetical to, conventional lifestyles or rituals and extant interpretive frames”. This is of two types; a) transformation of domain-specific interpretive frames which refers to “fairly self-contained but substantial changes in the way a particular domain of life is framed, such that a domain previously taken for granted is reframed as problematic and in need of repair, or a domain seen as normative and acceptable is reframed as an injustice that warrants change”, b) transformation of global interpretive frames, akin to radically changing the target audience’s worldview or ideology.113

The framing approach is very relevant to the current study for the following reasons:

1. The approach is capable of providing not only an understanding of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas but also their construction.

2. In writing and propagating jihad, 'Azzām was not acting as an ordinary Muslim scholar. He was not a passive supporter but an activist who sought to mobilise his target audience for jihad. In this respect, 'Azzām did not produce his works on jihad for academic reasons, unlike many traditional Muslim scholars. He produced them to serve an agenda that could not be said to be purely religious or theological but rather political and as a response to a problem that was deemed critical at the time. This again makes the framing method very relevant and in particular Snow et al.'s model, which is designed to examine frames produced by social movement entrepreneurs.

3. The Snow et al.'s model helps in the understanding of the dynamic relationship between events, ideas, beliefs, culture and audience, where each influences the other, resulting in meanings and ideas that affect mobilisation. This will be helpful in examining the 'Azzām’s jihad ideas. As the framer, he has embedded certain beliefs, ideas, values and cultures. The context within which 'Azzām operated in – the Soviet-Afghan war and the audience he was addressing his ideas to – were already embedded with certain beliefs, ideas, values and cultures. This is relevant because, although, ideas, values, beliefs, etc. are prone to changes due to circumstances and counter-arguments from opposing parties, individuals usually maintain certain core beliefs. These core beliefs guide the interpretation of events. They are not mere frames constructed to mobilise people. Rather, frames and contexts are used to promote these beliefs and values among people.114

4. 'Azzām’s idea of jihad was a response to the context. It is also important then to understand 'Azzām’s interpretation or framing of the context. The other side of the framing approach, as mentioned before, concerns the conversion of passive bystanders into supporters and activists through the interpretation (or reinterpretation) of events and issues. Thus, the approach is relevant in investigating 'Azzām’s frame

---

of the context, which contributed to the role he played, and subsequently in understanding his construction of the mobilisation for jihad.

Figure 1 below illustrates Snow et al.'s model of framing.

![Figure 1](image_url)

In *Islamic Activism: A Social Movement Theory Approach*, Quintan Wiktorowicz makes a relevant remark:

"... the study of Islamic activism has, for the most part, remained isolated from the plethora of theoretical and conceptual developments that have emerged from research on social movements and contentious politics. Instead most, publications on Islamic activism are either descriptive analyses of the ideology, structure, and goals of various Islamic actors or histories of particular movements. Other sociological dynamics typically remained unexamined or are downplayed as contingent upon the unique ideological orientation of Islam, thus implicitly essentializing Islamic activism as unintelligible in comparative terms and perpetuating beliefs in
Islamic exceptionalism ... scholarship has tended to ignore developments in social movement research that could provide theoretical leverage over many issues to Islamic activism.\textsuperscript{115}

This study will fill the gap. There are indeed various methods that can be used to analyse 'Azzām’s ideas of jihad such as operational tools analysis, critical discourse analysis and political ideology approaches. However, based on the above explanation, it is asserted that the framing approach is a viable tool for the proposed study. It offers a comprehensive and stable paradigm to examine 'Azzām’s jihad ideas. Like any other approach, it has imperfections and is not without criticism but it is a well-established approach that has been used by many other researchers to study various movements, individuals and ideas.\textsuperscript{116}

\underline{Unit of analysis, research questions, assumptions and structure}

The unit of analysis of this study is, 1) 'Azzām’s jihad ideas – the primary unit of analysis of this study, 2) 'Azzām’s interpretation of the event, i.e. the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan – a subsidiary unit of analysis to support the understanding of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas.

The study will be divided into the following chapters, not including this introduction chapter.

Chapter 2: Locating Jihadist Terrorism within Security/Strategic Studies

The chapter seeks to justify the relevance of this research work within strategic studies. It will argue that jihadist terrorism is not an intellectual and strategic anomaly, nor an


aberration which scholars could safely ignore. In particular, the chapter will explicate the role of ideas in security and strategic matters.

To this end, the chapter is divided into two parts. The first part will make a case for locating this research work within strategic studies. The second part will offer a broad understanding of the interest-based paradigm in security matters which on the surface appears to challenge the relevance of this research topic to strategic studies. It will then proceed to introduce ideational approach to strategic studies. Based on the latter, it will make a case that the former could not derail the relevance of this research topic to the field.

Chapter 3: Shades of Jihad Ideas and Trail of Militant Viewpoint

This chapter provides the literature review for this research. It will reconstruct the findings of scholarly work on the evolution of jihad ideas since the first century of Islam till recent times. It will provide a theoretical and historical understanding of jihad ideas as a background and foundation to this research topic.

The chapter will begin with the concept of jihad as it is understood from Islam’s primary sources and conventionally held by scholars of this study. It will then look into the evolution of the construction and invocation of jihad ideas across different and important periods of Islamic history. It will give special attention to the evolution of the current extreme strand by tracing its sources to individuals, groups and events.

The topic of jihad has often held the interests of Muslim and non-Muslim scholars alike contributing to massive works from the classical period till now. As it is not possible to offer an exhaustive review of all scholarly works on jihad, the chapter will focus on the more recent works.

Chapter 4: ‘Abd Allah `Azзам’s Jihad Ideas
This chapter will highlight 'Azzām’s jihad ideas based on books, articles and transcripts from his audio cassettes. It would encompass the following:

- Definition of jihad
- Status of jihad in Islam
- Other ideas relevant to jihad
- Types of jihad
- Ruling of jihad in today’s context
- Stages of revelation
- Objective of jihad
- Legitimate fighter
- Ethics and rules of jihad
- Martyrs
- Jihad and irḥāb (terrorism)
- The idea of Al-Qa’idāh

Chapter 5: Framing Jihad for Mobilisation

This chapter will investigate the following research questions, 1) How did ‘Azzām frame his jihad ideas? 2) How did the context in which he lived influence his ideas? 3) How did he use that context to frame his ideas in order to achieve his objectives?

Based on ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas and the understanding of context, this section will explain the working of the idea using the framing perspective of social mobilisation theory (SMT). The assumption is that what is critical in ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas and the views of other jihadists are not the ends per se but it is rather in how these ideas function as ideologies that mobilise the mass in order to achieve their political objectives.

Chapter 6: The Implications of ‘Azzām’s Ideas for National Security
This chapter will investigate the following research questions, 1) What are the implications of ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas for national security?; 2) In what ways could his ideas pose a security problem?

Here, the study will analyse the impact of ‘Azzām’s ideas on national security and the international system. The section will also analyse his ideas from the perspective of contemporary terrorism studies.

Chapter 7: ‘Azzām & Beyond: Insights for Current Counter-Jihadism Work

This chapter seeks to analyse ‘Azzām’s ideas and practices of jihad that would have, 1) negative impacts on the national security of many non-Muslim countries and could potentially have serious repercussions on global security; 2) the potential to counteract current jihadist ideology.

It also analyses some of the structural factors that were responsible for ‘Azzām’s popularity and the proliferation of his ideas, seeking a way to mitigate them.

Despite its focus on ‘Azzām, this study also seeks to uncover lessons that would contribute to the existing work against jihadist groups. In this regard, this chapter addresses the findings and all other issues arising from this study with the objective of providing insights to de-legitimise the current jihadist ideology, thereby mitigating its threat to national and global security.

Conclusion

This chapter has traced the cause of the dramatic September 11 incident to an important event – the mobilisation of Muslims for jihad against the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan. It has also identified ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas as the key to the mobilisation process. The Soviet-Afghan war mobilisation has a causal link to the emergence of the current strand of jihadism that threatens security today.
The chapter has asserted that the threat of jihadism can only be overcome through the understanding of what is jihadism and what are its historical roots. Despite the important role that 'Azzām played and the effect of his jihad ideas, he has hitherto been an under-studied figure.

The chapter has identified the framing approach and Snow et al.'s model as the appropriate tools for analysis and reconstruction tool of 'Azzām's jihad ideas. It has set out the aim of this study, which is to significantly contribute to the academic field, in particular to the study of Islamism, jihadism, and counter-terrorism.
CHAPTER 2

LOCATING JIHADIST TERRORISM WITHIN SECURITY/STRATEGIC STUDIES

Introduction

The previous chapter established ‘Abd Allah ‘Azzâm as an important figure who was influential in popularising the concept of jihad amongst Muslims during the Soviet-Afghan war, such that it eventually evolved into contemporary jihadism and led to the emergence of Al-Qaeda. It has also demonstrated the relevance of understanding ‘Azzâm’s jihad ideas in order to understand and mitigate the current threat of jihadism.

This chapter sets out to answer the question, “In what ways is this study relevant to the field of strategic studies?”

Some scholars consider the study of terrorism as a separate field from strategic studies. They regard terrorism as a criminal act that should fall within the domain of domestic politics, which today is closely associated with homeland security studies. To them ideas, like jihadism or specifically ‘Azzâm’s jihad ideas, are seen as abstractions that are not relevant to security and strategic matters because it is held that the primary concern in security and strategic matters is power, measured in material terms.

This chapter will argue that jihadist terrorism is not an intellectual or strategic anomaly, nor is it an aberration that scholars could safely ignore. The arguments in this chapter will seek 1) to locate jihadist terrorism within security studies, and 2) to explicate the role of ideas in security and strategic matters.

For this purpose, this chapter is divided into two parts. The first part will make a case for locating this research work within strategic studies. The second part will offer a broad
understanding of the existing paradigms in security matters. It will then proceed to introduce an ideational approach to security studies.

Relevance of Jihadist Terrorism to Strategic Studies

Introducing strategic studies

In his book *An Introduction to Strategic Studies*, Barry Buzan cites various definitions for strategic studies: “the art of distributing and applying military means to fulfill ends of policy” by Liddell Hart; “exploiting military force so as to attain given objects of policy” by Hedley Bull; “the relationship between military power and political purpose” by Colin S. Gray and “the art of dialectic of two opposing wills using force to resolve their dispute” by Andre Beaufre.1

In essence, strategic studies is about the use of military force, whether actual or as a threat, to achieve certain political objectives. The most important of these is the survival of the state from extermination, or protection of its sovereignty from external powers that are set to subjugate its land, impose their will on it or interfere in its internal affairs. Security in this context is regarded as the most valued national interest.2

The issues concerned within the strategic studies, among others, are about how war starts and ends, how peace can be achieved, nuclear weapon deployment, deterrence and the use of air, sea and land power, and the impact of technology on the military. The domain is the international system wherein states interact with one another. It is important to note

that due to the interconnectedness of strategic studies with other related fields, it is difficult to make a clear demarcation of what belongs to which field.\footnote{Buzan, \textit{Strategic Studies}, 3-5}

Traditionally, the term “strategic studies” was interchangeable with “security studies”. In an article entitled \textit{The Renaissance of Security Studies}, Stephen M. Walt introduces security studies “as the study of the threat, use and control of military force. It explores the conditions that make the use of force more likely, the ways that the use of force affects individuals, states, and societies, and the specific policies that states adopt in order to prepare for, prevent, or engage in war.”\footnote{Stephen M. Walt, “The Renaissance of Security Studies,” \textit{International Studies Quarterly}, 35, no. 2 (June 1991): 212.} According to Lawrence Freedman, “international security addresses questions of force: how to spot it, stop it, resist it, and occasionally threaten and even use it. It considers the conditions that encourage or discourage organized violence in international affairs and the conduct of all types of military activity.”\footnote{Lawrence Freedman, “International Security: Changing Targets,” \textit{Foreign Policy}, 110 (Spring 1998): 48.}


“The term ‘security studies’, denoting a wider branch of teaching and scholarship than the military tradition of strategic studies, is of relatively recent coinage. American usage tends to conflate the two terms, by contrast with the European. A distinction between strategic studies and security studies has evolved in the practice of scholars moving from the concerns with military forces and weapons to the wider consideration of economy and politics. Buzan defines the focus of strategic studies as ‘the
effects of the instruments of the force on international relations'. This is not remote from the common, standard — if questionable — definition of ‘security studies’ as ‘the study of ‘the threat, use, and control of military force’.”

To understand strategic studies better, one can look at its relationship with fields that are related to it in the following four concentric circles.

Richard K. Betts writes,

“Within the field of international relations constantly driven by sectarian debates about overarching frameworks like realism, liberalism and their ‘neo’ variants, the murky boundaries of strategy fuel controversy. To clarify where strategic studies should fit, think of a subfield of three concentric circles: at the core is military science (how technology, organisation and tactics combine to win battles); the outermost inclusive ring is security studies (everything that bears on the safety of a polity); and in the middle lies strategic studies (how political ends and military means interact under social, economic, and other constraints).”

Thomas G. Mahnken shares the same view.

---

1 Ibid, 26; See also Haftendorn, “The Security Puzzle,” 15.
Betts and Buzan also allude to the field of international relations as the fourth concentric circle. Buzan compares the relationship between strategic studies and international relations to that of the heart and circulatory system within the human body.

"Just as one cannot understand the whole organism without understanding the heart and circulatory system, neither can one understand the purpose and function of the heart and circulatory system without seeing them in the context of the complete body. Strategic Studies is similarly a vital component of the larger whole of International Relations. It has elements that make it distinct, but it is connected in myriad ways that severely limit the extent to which the two can be disconnected without risking potentially fatal misunderstanding. International Relations without Strategic Studies would seriously misrepresent the major realities in play between states. Strategic Studies detached from the International Relations would be in danger of seeing only the conflictual element in relations between states and taking it as the whole reality... International Relations cover a broad spectrum which includes political, economic, social, legal and cultural relations as well as military ones."\(^{10}\)

**Locating jihadist terrorism in strategic studies**

Traditionally, the primary concern of strategic studies is the security of the state from the threat of external military force. Thus, the field has a narrower focus and is primarily preoccupied with the use of military force during armed conflict.

This, then, raises the question on the relevance of jihadist terrorism to the field. Al-Qaeda for example, as the primary representative of jihadist terrorism threatening state security, is not a state actor. It is a transnational organisation that has been known to operate in Afghanistan, Pakistan and Iraq with affiliates and allies in various other countries.

Despite its small size, Al-Qaeda has succeeded in winning over some segments of Muslims in various countries to take up causes for the organisation.\textsuperscript{11} There is also the impression that terrorism does not resemble modern war as it is traditionally understood in strategic studies. Thus, it is seen as a secondary threat that does not deserve a legitimate place in the field.\textsuperscript{12} Most states regard terrorism as a crime that falls under the purview of law enforcement agencies. The emergence of homeland security studies as a direct consequence of the September 11 terror attacks has pulled jihadism further away from strategic studies.\textsuperscript{13}

The following arguments, however, will place the relevance of jihadist terrorism within strategic studies.

Like other related studies, strategic studies has been affected by recent developments in the international arena, triggering new thinking, reconceptualisation and revisiting of traditional understandings. Within strategic studies, concepts such the transformation of strategic affairs, transformation of warfare, fourth-generation warfare and asymmetric warfare have emerged and are relevant to this research.\textsuperscript{14}

Today, these concepts have been influential in shaping strategic and military affairs. The underlying perpect of the transformation of strategic affairs, transformation of warfare, fourth-generation warfare and asymmetric warfare is the increasing importance of irregular and unconventional war.\textsuperscript{15}

\textsuperscript{15}Freedman, \textit{Strategic Affairs}, 5-10.
What triggered the transformation of strategic affairs, according to Lawrence Freedman, is the revolution in political affairs. Freedman writes:

"The reasons for suggesting that a transformation of strategy is now underway reflect the demilitarization of inter-state relations, particularly among great powers, and the expansion of the state system as a result of decolonization, which has resulted in many new states that are also internally not stable. Often, this instability leads to violence and brings irregular forces into being..." 16

Violence perpetrated by irregular forces, as exemplified by ethnic clashes in Rwanda and by the militia in Somalia, often poses security problems not limited to the respective countries and require intervention by the international community through the deployment of regular armed forces to stabilise the situations or mitigate the consequences. 17 However, regular forces have been trained primarily for conventional warfare and are as yet ill-equipped for irregular and unconventional conflict. This has ramifications on strategic decision-making and the operational aspects of military operations.

With the new thinking on strategic affairs, comes a new and expanded role for military forces. Increasingly today, military forces are being deployed for non-traditional military roles such as peacekeeping, humanitarian intervention, nation-building, disaster and emergency response and even to combat transnational jihadist terrorism. These new roles are known as military-operations-other-than-war (MOOTW). 18

To be effective in the new conflict environment and with their new roles, military forces must have a good understanding of the characteristics of emerging, fundamentally irregular and asymmetric, warfare. In this respect, Martin Van Creveld’s work on the

---

17 Ibid, 10.
transformation of war as well as William S. Lind’s and Thomas X. Hamme’s work on the fourth-generation warfare (4GW), have been instructive. According to these authors, the future war will be characterised by:

- highly irregular, unconventional and decentralised approaches, also known as low-intensity conflict.
- asymmetric operations such as attacking and exploiting political, economic, population and symbolic targets with the objective of demoralising the psyche of governments and populations so as to diminish the effectiveness of the military power of nation states.
- irregular and non-state belligerents in the form of terrorists, guerrillas and bandits, masked in “deception, denial, stealth and related techniques of intelligence statecraft”, wearing no uniforms and seeking to blend into the population of the targeted state.
- non-professional belligerent combatants primarily motivated by fanatical ideological/religious-based loyalties.
- network-based and transnational belligerents with global reach, making full use of information technology.
- belligerents unconstrained by laws and the conventions of war that apply to states.
- battlefields profoundly impacted by modern communication and transportation technologies with no clear battle fronts, making the traditional distinction between civilian and military targets irrelevant.
- the use of new and innovative means, including weapons of mass destruction, marked by unlimited violence and indiscriminate targets with the objective of inflicting maximum destruction.
- the nature of the enemy offers few targets that are vulnerable to modern conventional weapon systems.\(^{19}\)

This look at the new concept of warfare and the new role of military forces calls to mind the global war on terrorism (GWOT), a war which to a large extent is a campaign against jihadist terrorism, launched and led by the United States. According to Freedman, “A further twist has been added by the arrival of super-terrorism as a major security threat and the campaign led by the Bush administration to deal directly with those responsible for the past acts of terrorism and potentially for future acts.”

The GWOT resembles many aspects of the new warfare. It is asymmetric because of the limited power possessed by the belligerents. The transnational character of jihadist terrorism – and jihadist objectives – has blurred the traditional understanding of battlefields. This has been exemplified by the bombings in London, Madrid and Bali. Jihadist groups, with Al-Qaeda’s instigation, have also conducted numerous attacks all over the world since the September 11 incident and the commencement of the GWOT.

The GWOT is a war against networks rather an organisation. Marc Sageman observes that the perpetrator is more a network of a social movement, or of less formal organisations, rather than a specific one. These separate entities are linked in patterns of interaction with various degrees of cooperation through a complex web of direct and mediated exchanges. These networks, then, have given birth to self-radicalised individuals who are not affiliated to jihadist groups or Al-Qaeda, but are sympathetic to its ideology and causes.

The conflict waged by Al-Qaeda has been characterised by the indiscriminate targeting of civilians. Bin Laden pronounced, “The ruling to kill the Americans and their allies –

---

20 See Hammes, Sling and Stone, chapter 10, 11 and 12; Shultz and Vogt, “It’s War!”, 8; Sedgewick, "Religious Terrorism,” 795-814.
21 Freedman, Strategic Affairs, 10, 44-8, 65-73.
22 Ibid, 49-54.
civilians and military – is an individual duty for every Muslim who can do it in any country in which it is possible to do it." The resulting deeds are seen clearly in the September 11 incident and subsequent attacks in London, Madrid, Bali and many other places.

Due to the ideological nature of the enemy and the nature of its ideology, it has been widely realised that the success of the GWOT will rely on the battle for hearts and minds. It is a "war of ideas" rather than a war of firepower.

One of the lessons that can be learned from the GWOT, Freedman suggests, is the importance and impact of not only ideas in fuelling the conflict, but also images such as the pictures of the abused prisoners at Abu Ghraib. He writes, "This suggests that a focus on the kinetic aspects of war must miss some of the more intriguing, difficult and significant features of contemporary conflict."

With the ongoing military operations in two major theatres of the GWOT – Afghanistan and Iraq – played by military forces of multiple countries, the correlation between the new concept of warfare and the fight against jihadist terrorism is not just theoretical.

The relevance of the new concept of warfare in the GWOT should also be seen from the perspective of the jihadists themselves. Jihadist literature has revealed keen interest in learning from it for operational use, as observed by Andrew Black from the work of jihadist strategist Muṣṭafā Satmaryam Naṣīr (aka Mustafa Setmariam Nasar), whose nom de guerre is Abū Mus'ab Al-Sūriy. It is, then, appropriate to assume that the close resemblance of jihadist operations in Iraq, Afghanistan and other places are not coincidences, but carried out with a belief in its advantage and utility value.

---

27 Country Reports on Terrorism 2007, 223. See also Shultz and Vogt, "It's War!", 7-21.
28 Freedman, Strategic Affairs, 71.
29 Ibid, 5-10, 44, 47-54, 65.
30 Andrew Black, "Al-Suri’s Adaptation of Fourth Generation Warfare Doctrine," Terrorism Monitor 4, no. 18 (21 September 2006); See also Shanne Drennan and Andrew Black, "Fourth-Generation Warfare and International Jihad," Intelligence Review, 18, no. 10 (October 2006).
Admittedly, the jihadists are not the only protagonists for the United States and its allies. There are other groups with various ideological leanings. Also, not all jihadist groups employ terrorism tactics. But the presence of jihadist groups that have been closely related to terrorism is undeniable. The launch of military operations in Afghanistan only a few weeks after the 9/11 attacks clearly points out its direct relations with the fight against jihadist terrorism.\textsuperscript{31}

Mahnken opines that the future health of strategic studies would rely on its ability to illuminate relevant issues, and jihadist terrorism is one of the issues that merit special attention.\textsuperscript{32}

Strategic studies, as the main field of study on military strategy and operations, could provide insights and guidance required by military commanders at various levels today. Insights from strategic studies scholars could contribute to the success of the GWOT and boost the relevance, and subsequently reputation, of the field among military commanders and civilian policymakers.

Admittedly, the idea of new warfare has not gone uncontested. Colin S. Gray claims that what has been called as new warfare will not fundamentally change the nature and master narrative of war. Some of his views are:

- War remains as an “organized violence threatened or waged for political purposes.” Its primary means is “physical force” used with the objective of imposing one’s will on the enemy.
- War is still characterised by uncertainty, chance and friction. The advancement of technology, particularly information, communication and precision technology, does not change the war’s characteristics.

\textsuperscript{31}Freedman, \textit{Strategic Affairs}, 48.
\textsuperscript{32}Mahnken, “Future of Strategic Studies,” xi-xiv.
• War will never be obsolete as factors that could trigger it continue to exist. Although there have been increased aversion against war among Western countries, the idea is not necessarily shared by other cultures. Furthermore, politics, which ultimately is about power, will continue to use warfare as an option.

• Emerging new security agendas such as environmental degradation, economic instability and cultural identity, will not make war or national defence less important. He writes, “The old reasons for conflict have not disappeared, while the new agenda items are themselves all but certain to spark future warfare.”

• Geopolitics remains an important factor for war. To Gray, the “geopolitical tale does not change … the principal story of war will be yet further endeavours by the powers of the ‘Midland Ocean, pre-eminently the United States, to deny Eurasian domination to the menace of the era. Most probably, that menace will be China and Russia, in alliance, though it could be an axis of China and EU-Europe.”

• The advancement of technology only affects warfare, but not war. Warfare is the conduct of war and may not necessarily be military. The history of war has always been synonymous with the history of weapons technology, but “war’s other context, the political, social, cultural and strategic, will be as, or more important than the technological.” Focus on technology, as found in the idea of the revolution in military affairs, “explains too little of the rich and complex multi-dimensionality of war and strategy.”

• Terrorism is just a mode of irregular warfare that has always been part of warfare.

• Future warfare will be similar to current ones. They will be either regular or irregular warfare. The former is between regular armed forces of states and the latter is between the armed forces of the state and other belligerents. Regular conventional warfare as understood will not be superseded by irregular, asymmetric or fourth-generation types.33

In essence, Gray does not consider the “future war” as suggested by Ven Creveld, Lind and Hammes as a complete transformation of war. To him, “future warfare will be much

like past warfare, albeit with different machines and in somewhat different political, social and cultural contexts. The continuities will far outreach the discontinuities.... ‘There is no future warfare’... future warfare will simply be warfare.” 34

Nonetheless, Gray does not totally reject the effect of advancements in precision weapons, information and communication technology and the “post-modern” characteristics of belligerents like Al-Qaeda in the conduct of war and their relevance to strategic studies. These characteristics, according to him, will affect how war will be fought, but not change the nature of war. Gray however agrees that from a strategic perspective Al-Qaeda has to be theologically delegitimised 35 before it can be overcome. This cannot be effectively accomplished without a thorough understanding of its ideology of which ’Azzam figures prominently.

Freedman also indicates the relevance of jihadist terrorism to strategic studies when he relates the GWOT with strategic studies in his work on the transformation of strategic affairs. 36

If jihadist terrorism closely resembles the new warfare that is the major topic of strategic studies today, then, the study of it becomes important and relevant. If the war against jihadist terrorism is primarily a war of ideas, then, strategic scholars must understand the ideology that underlies jihadist terrorism and the field of strategic studies must embrace and encourage research in jihadism. Freedman writes, “To understand those who resort to terroristic tactics, it is helpful to consider their ideology and political programme as a whole. It then becomes apparent that many quite distinctive groups have indulged in terrorism, which is why analysts tend to distinguish between religious, nationalist, leftist, rightist and cultist types.” 37

34 Ibid, 165-7.
35 Ibid, 244.
36 Freedman, Strategic Affairs, 44-8, 65-71.
37 Ibid, 45.
Freedman’s idea on the importance of strategic narrative in determining victory in war supports this study on jihadism and ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas. To compose a strategic narrative that can provide legitimacy of one’s war effort and delegitimise the enemy, one needs to have correct answers to questions such as on the nature of the enemy, support received by the enemy and narratives that support the enemy’s genesis, growth, maturation and transformation, to enable effective strategy which will undermine the efficacy of narratives that animate and mobilise support for the enemy’s objective.  

Similarly, Mahnken supports the view that success against Al-Qaeda will demand a good understanding of its strategic thought.

The relevance of this research is magnified in the light of Peter R. Neuman’s and M.L.R. Smith’s observations that despite the subject’s popularity after September 11, there has been an absence of any meaningful examination of terrorism from a strategic viewpoint. This is despite, they note in 2005, the online book retailer Amazon.com having 20,000 titles on terrorism available.

A cursory survey of Journal of Strategic Studies, an important journal for the field, would corroborate Neuman’s and Smith’s observations. The journal publishes six issues per year, with an average of five articles per issue. Since the September 11 incident, the number of journal articles related to terrorism has been very small (11) compared to the total number of published articles (270). Furthermore, there has been none published on the underlying ideas of Muslim militancy from a strategic point of view. There was, however, attention given to the matter of winning hearts and minds in the context of counterinsurgency – a special issue was dedicated to it.

---

38 Ibid, 22-6.
39 Mahnken, “Future Of Strategic Studies,” xii.
41 This is based on an approximate calculation of 9 (volumes, 2002-2009) x 6 (issues/year) x 5 (articles/issue).
While this research will not provide a comprehensive study of jihadism, it will contribute to the broader objective of understanding jihadism through the study of ‘Azzâm’s jihad ideas. Based on the above, it is asserted that this research topic is very relevant to strategic studies.

The importance and relevance of this research from the perspective of the traditional understanding of security/strategic studies is further reinforced by the following observations.

Before the emergence of the idea of transformation of strategic affairs and new concepts of warfare, developments in thinking about strategy had expanded its meaning to beyond the use of military force. Strategy has been conceptualised to encompass all available means of power – social, economic, political, as well as military. This perspective is currently known as grand strategy. Based on the grand strategy approach, a wider understanding of any actor or key figure – including ideology – is important to win a war.

Ideas in Security Studies

It has been highlighted in the previous chapter that jihadism is the driving force for terrorism today. Jihadism espouses the attainment of political power or the overthrow of existing regimes so as to establish an Islamic state or a caliphate via violent means.

The above assertion presents a problem for the power/interest-based paradigm, which is also materialist-positivist, that remains dominant in the field of security studies. The paradigm holds that the primary driver of international politics, which encompasses security issues, is defined in terms of power. This paradigm represents the traditional security perspective which is founded on the following important points:

- Every state has a single identity; it is a self-interested power/security-seeker and a rational actor. According to neo-realism, the identity of the state is derived from

anarchy, as the objective structural reality of the international environment or international politics. Classical realism, however, viewed that it is derived from basic human nature that is a power-seeking creature who constantly seeks to dominate others.

- In view of the anarchical nature of international politics and the human lust for power, security from external subjugation or interference is the primary interest of all states.
- Not all states are benign actors. After attaining superior power, some states seek to subjugate others out of greed or imperialist ambition or strategic security imperative; and there is no reliable method to ascertain a state’s intention.

Both the anarchy and ambiguity of states’ intention create uncertainty in the international arena. Because states regard security as their primary interest, they consider it prudent to be wary and cautious about other states’ intention and motives by maintaining a posture of deterrence through constant power accumulation, alliance or some other strategy.

A rationalist variant within this paradigm is that the material calculation of costs and benefits actually drives politics. States would always opt for policies that bring greater material benefit relative to the material cost. Similarly, policies are abandoned or changed if the cost is greater than the benefit. Thus, ideas on their own do not drive the state preferences.

44 Anarchy here does not imply disorder or chaos. It refers to “the absence of any central authority over the sovereign states means that world politics necessarily approximates the imagined state of nature depicted by Thomas Hobbes, among others, in which there is a “war of all against all” . . .” Cathal J. Nolan, The Greenwood Encyclopedia of International Relations, 1, (Westport: Greenwood, 2001). 55. “The opposite of anarchy is hierarchy, the condition in which units are organized so that one is entitled to command and others are required to obey.” Martin Griffiths (ed.), Encyclopedia of International Relations and Global Politics, (London: Routledge, 2005), 20.


Since the materialist-positivist holds that "all true knowledge is scientific"\(^{47}\), meaning that all analyses must be based on "observable, preferably, quantifiable regularities that can be measured and subjected to empirical test"\(^{48}\), power is invariably defined in material terms. Explaining rationalist approaches, David C. Thomas writes "individuals act in ways that appear most likely to help them achieve preexisting interests which are generally defined in material terms."\(^{49}\)

Two most important measurements of power emerge from this paradigm: military and economic capabilities. The former belongs to the realist tradition while the latter to the liberalist.\(^{50}\)

Because ideas are abstractions that cannot be measured, direct causal explanations for any phenomenon — if we use this paradigm — cannot be reached. Thus, it is asserted that ideas cannot be a factor in analysing international politics.

The role of ideas, according to this paradigm, is relegated to providing rationalisations and justifications for an underlying material basis, or simply to providing mere rhetoric. States construct ideas in response to material development or changes in relative power, not the opposite.\(^{51}\)

---


**Ideas Matter Actually**

Ideas, in the context of this discussion, refer to “subjective claims of the world, causal relationships or the normative legitimacy of certain actions.”\footnote{Tannenwald, “Ideas and Explanation,” 14; Tannenwald and Wohlforth, “Role of Ideas,” 6; Petrova, “The End of the Cold War,” 136; Hopf, “Promise of Constructivism,” 177.} They include abstractions such as worldviews, policy prescriptions, beliefs about right and wrong, knowledge, culture and ideology.\footnote{Ibid, 15.} They are cognitive constructs that direct behaviour.

Ideas that are of interest in international politics concern collective, shared and intersubjective beliefs that constitute identities and orientate behavioural regularities.\footnote{Ibid, 15.} To understand ideas and their role in international politics, Ninna Tannenwald describes four types of ideas:

1. Ideologies defined as belief systems or doctrines shared by a group, class, culture or state that reflect their social needs and aspirations. Examples of these are liberalism, Marxism and fascism.
2. Normative or principled beliefs defined as those that distinguish right from wrong and just from unjust. They consist of values and attitudes that provide the standards of behaviour. An example of a normative belief is the belief in universal human rights.
3. Causal beliefs defined as those that direct individuals on how to achieve their objectives using the best possible means.

4. Policy prescriptions defined as “the specific programmatic ideas derived from causal or principled beliefs or from ideologies. They are precise causal ideas that facilitate policymaking by specifying how to solve particular policy problems.” They are associated with specific strategies and policy programmes.56

Scholars who hold the view that ideas do matter significantly (ideational paradigm) assert that the realm of international politics is not just about material power. This is because there are many instances where material notions of interest cannot offer satisfactory explanations of events occurring in international politics.57 For example, materialist-positivist-rationalist explanations do not satisfactorily explain the reasons behind:

- Gorbachev’s failed foreign policy which eventually led to the collapse of the Soviet Union, the dissolution of the Warsaw Pact and finally the end of the Cold War, in spite of the Soviet Union’s significant material capability, the United States’ decline in material power and the availability of other policy options.58
- Why the United States regards North Korea’s possession of a few nuclear weapons and Iran’s nuclear programme as a threat, but not the larger quantity of nuclear weapons held by the United Kingdom and France.
- The Western countries’ boycott of South Africa under apartheid rule even though it did not pose an imminent security threat and instead could offer significant trade and economic opportunities.

Scholars of the ideational paradigm are heterogeneous in their views and orientation. They come from various traditions such as constructivism, feminism, critical theory, socio-psychology and post-modernism. However, they share basic foundational views about the role of ideas in international politics.

57 Desch, “Culture Clash,” 142-4.
The ideational paradigm views international politics as a social phenomenon where interaction among actors, and between actors and the structure occur in the form of practices like social learning, education, emulation, competition, persuasion, networking, commerce, conflict and war in the domestic and local domains. From these interactions, two important ideas are constructed that will fundamentally shape their conduct in international politics. The first is the identity of the actors that, 1) makes a “person” aware of who he is; 2) tells others who a “person” is; 3) identifies who the others are and; 4) sets interests and preference. The second idea is the meaning of the structure to the actors that interact with it.\textsuperscript{60}

The identity of self and others, and the ideas about interest, preferences and structure are all mutually constituted and endogenous to the interaction, not exogenously given by the structure as held by the materialist-positivist paradigm.\textsuperscript{62} Mutual constitution means that in the interaction among actors, and between actors and the structure, all the elements provide and derive meanings from each other and are inseparable. Since a state interacts with many other states at any particular time and in different political settings, it derives different meanings about its identity and the structure depending on the equation or elements involved in the interaction. This then will set for the state different interests and preferences depending on the elements that constitute all of them. Thus, in stark contradiction to the materialist-positivist paradigm, the ideational paradigm views that the state in international politics could have multiple identities and interests at the same time, and that the identities and interests could change with the elements that constitute them. Thus, ideas also offer explications to change in

international politics—the emergence of new ideas that provide the basis for new political relationships. 63

In other words, the state has no single identity and interest, anarchy has no single meaning or determinant logic, i.e. leads to war and conflict, and the state responds differently to international political settings depending on what she makes out of her identity, the identity of the others and anarchy. 64 Both identity and anarchy are variables, not constants, in international politics. 65

The state has a wider range of choices than is assumed by neo-realism, although these choices could be constrained by the structures that are mutually constituted by states and social practices. 66

Because social interactions that constitute the state’s identity and interest involve not only other states, this paradigm holds that the construction of identity, interest and the meanings in the structure is not the sole doing of the states. Parties that are equally responsible include, among others, social and intellectual elites, epistemic communities, institutions, bureaucracies, activists and members of the media. 67

Ideational scholars argue that it is ideas that give material factors causal effect because they give meaning to them and to the structure that shapes interests and preferences. This

eventually dictates the state’s policy and the conduct of actors in international politics.\(^{68}\) Material forces have no influence except where they are mediated by ideas.\(^{69}\)

Thus, ideational scholars would offer the following explication for the three examples discussed earlier:

Gorbachev’s foreign policy which had led to the end of the Cold War was the result of his social interactions with the West and domestic social and intellectual elites, and the failure of communism to fulfill his ideals. These catalyzed new thinking on the identity of the West and the USSR itself, set new interests and provided new meanings to security in relation to the international political environment which eventually contributed to Gorbachev’s new policy of rapprochement with the West and of peaceful retrenchment from Eastern Europe.\(^{70}\)

The different attitudes adopted by the United States towards Iran, North Korea, the United Kingdom and France vis-à-vis their respective nuclear weapons and nuclear programmes were due to the identity that it attached to each of these countries. Iran and North Korea were regarded as members of the “Axis of Evil”, representing the authoritarian and tyrant regimes seen as anathema to the free and democratic world which France and the United Kingdom are identified to be part of. As Iran and North Korea are regarded as threats to the values held by the free and democratic world, the few nuclear weapons, or the potential to develop nuclear weapons in the hands of these countries were believed to be more dangerous than the larger numbers held by countries not of the same identity. Since the United States views itself and is viewed by some as the great power among the free and democratic world, it feels compelled to act against the hostile others for the security of all.\(^{71}\)

---


\(^{69}\) Petrova, “The End of the Cold War,” 147.


\(^{71}\) Checkel, “The Constructivist Turn,” 326.
The Western countries' boycott of South Africa during apartheid was motivated by human rights norms rather than the economic benefits that South Africa offered. Having economic relations with the apartheid regime – an identity that contradicted the human rights norms – was not consistent with the identity that Western countries attached to themselves. In this instance also, interest was shaped by values, not material consideration.72

To understand the influence of ideas in policy through social practices by various actors as held by ideational scholars, Albert S. Yee's diagram below is helpful.73

The merit of the ideational paradigm, and its advantage above the materialist-positivist paradigm lies in its ability to explain why some states acted contrary to the structural imperatives of the international system as exemplified in the above three examples and provide alternative understanding of the world.74

---

73 Yee, "Causal Effects of Ideas," 87.
In summary, ideas matter in international politics and security affairs. They do have intrinsic values and roles independent from the material factor.

**Current Trend**

The unexpected end of the Cold War has brought the ideational paradigm to greater prominence in international relations studies and all its subfields. It triggered criticism by ideational scholars against the materialist-positivist paradigm, in particular the neoliberal variant, for its inability to predict and offer satisfactorily causal explanations of events. This compelled materialist-positivist scholars to respond in defence of it.75

The dialogue that ensued between scholars of the two paradigms has had significant impact on the study of international relations and its subfields. This dialogue has helped to close the gap and bridge the differences between the two.76

The study of international relations is increasingly geared towards reconciliation between the different paradigms and the inter-paradigm analysis of international politics. Stephen Walt, a prominent neo-realist scholar, for example, lays down various approaches for the study.77

Although ideational scholars argue that interest is often perceived through ideas, they admit that interest does not simply change by changing ideas and meanings. Ideas that have stabilised are not easy to be replaced with new ones due to material, structural and institutional constraints.78 Many ideational scholars also admit that, despite the important role that ideas play, political life is not ideas all the way down but a combination of ideas,

---
material and other factors. However, most ideational scholars will tend to argue that ideas, most of the time, play a more important role than material factors.

Today, most scholars of different paradigms have conceded that international politics can hardly be a mono-causal event, meaning that ideas and material factors do matter and each could have a greater role than the other depending on the circumstances.

Extreme views that insist on either ideas or material factors playing the dominant role do exist, but are extremely rare.

With the acceptance of the ideational paradigm as part of the study of international relations and its security studies branch, this, thus, implies that the study related to jihadism, a type of idea, or specifically, the jihad ideas of `Azzām, and its relation with the current threat of terrorism, is relevant to the field of security studies and its strategic studies subfield.

Conclusion

This chapter has located jihadist terrorism within strategic studies.

Traditionally, jihadist terrorism falls under the topic of irregular warfare. Its relevance increased with the introduction of new concepts such as fourth-generation and asymmetrical warfare.

---

82 Sorensen, “IR theory,” 86-91.
Although non-traditional security differs from strategic studies due to its expanded concept of security, it is still related when it comes to the issue of new warfare. The developments that have occurred in international politics, military technology and warfare make it difficult to think of topics in strategic studies without relating it to non-traditional security.

Furthermore, jihadist terrorism, seen as a threat to human security perpetrated by transnational and non-state actors is indeed relevant to non-traditional security.

The power/interest-based paradigm that questioned the relevance of ideas to security matters does not derail the study of jihadism from its place in strategic studies because it is not the only lens which can be used. Ideational paradigms that inform the role of ideas in security matters has been widely accepted by scholars as one of the many lenses through which security matters can be analysed. Increasingly also, scholars are calling for inter- and multi-paradigm views of security.

Based on the above, it should be concluded that the chapter has sufficiently made a case for the relevance of the study on jihadism within security/strategic studies. The relevance, however, is not only theoretical. Since the outbreak of the GWOT, which has caused massive deployment of military forces in Iraq and Afghanistan, the relevance of this study has significant value in strategic thinking.
CHAPTER 3

SHADES OF JIHAD IDEAS AND TRAIL OF MILITANT VIEWPOINT

Introduction

The previous two chapters have demonstrated the academic and practical value of this study and its relevance to strategic studies.

This chapter offers a literature review of the study and attempts to reconstruct and collate the findings of scholarly work on various jihad ideas from the 7th century till today so as to provide the theoretical and historical basis for understanding ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas.

The chapter will explore the concept of jihad from Islam’s primary sources and widely held perspectives of scholars in this field. It will illustrate, based on the relevant literature, four major strands of jihad ideas: classical, traditionalist, reformist and militant. The chapter is thus divided in accordance to these four strands. Each section provides a literature review of each strand. The chapter then ends with comments from various scholars. The comments offer nuanced insights on the study of jihad and the evolution of jihad ideas in Islamic tradition that would be useful when analysing ‘Azzām’s ideas and the phenomenon of jihadism in the subsequent chapters.

The classical strand of jihad ideas refers to those found in major works on jihad or Islamic jurisprudence during the period right after the Prophet until the introduction of modern ideas to the Muslim world by the West from the 18th century onwards. It is an important strand because it provides the foundation for all other strands. None of the other three strands is totally free from the influence of the classical strand.

Reformists seek to reconcile classical jihad ideas with modern concepts of war and peace. Radical reformists however, see little relevance for classical Islamic thinking in the
contemporary period. Traditionalist and militant jihadists share a common objective, which is to preserve all classical Islamic ideas and bring Muslims back to its earliest principles.

As this research will be explored through the prism of strategic studies, this chapter will give special attention to the militant strand of jihad and trace the individuals, groups and events significant to its development. However, as the volume of work on jihad is extensive, this chapter will focus on the more recent literature.

**Classical Strand of Jihad**

This section will provide an overview of jihad ideas in classical works. These works are still revered by Muslim scholars and remain as the main texts on the subject. To a certain extent, classical jihad ideas continue to be disseminated to the Muslim public.¹

Revisions and reinterpretations by the traditionalist, reformist and militant strands will be highlighted where appropriate.

**Meaning of jihad**

All classical scholars agreed that the word “jihad” carries general and specific meanings. The term “jihad” is derived from the Arabic word jahada, which means “to strive”. The etymological meaning (and, for our purposes, the general meaning) of jihad is to strive to carry out God’s commands, be it in performing righteous deeds or in restraining oneself from evil. The specific meaning of jihad is armed striving. There has been ceaseless discussion by Muslim scholars on the objective and target of armed jihad. These discussions will be summarised in the following sections.²

Classical Muslim jurists (fuqaha') often used the word “jihad” as a synonym for armed conflict and would refer it to armed conflict when it is followed by “fi sabil Allāh” (in the path of Allāh).³

**Fundamental prerequisite**

Classical scholars agreed that for armed conflict to be recognised as jihad, it must be done fi sabil Allāh where the intention must be purely to promote the religion of Allāh or li ḫiṣāl kalimat Allāh (to elevate the word of Allāh), and comply with the shari’ah as revealed in the Qurʾān and exemplified by the Prophet in the hadith (Prophetic traditions). Any actions conducted for worldly gain is not recognised as jihad.⁴

**Various forms of jihad**

There are various forms of jihad recognised in classical works. Personal jihad, also known as the greater jihad, encompasses self-development and the purification of the self from evil desires. Verbal jihad means to offer advice to those who need it, while jihad with the hand, refers to performing community services or even armed jihad. Hence, armed jihad, also known as the lesser jihad, is just one of the many forms of jihad in Islam.⁵

**Theological basis**

The theological basis of jihad is clearly stated in the verses of the Qurʾān. Furthermore, the permissibility of armed jihad is reinforced through the verbal pronouncements, encouragements and actions of the Prophet as reported in many hadiths. This proves that jihad – and indeed armed jihad – is an integral part of the shari’ah.

**Stages of jihad**


Classical scholars agreed that jihad had been introduced in stages. While there is disagreement on the number of stages, the overall picture is as follows.

Before the hijrah (migration to Medina), Muslims only carried out the jihad of self-purification (greater jihad) and peaceful propagation of Islam. This was despite the fact that the early Muslims in Mecca were being abused and persecuted by the pagan Arabs. After the hijrah, Qur’anic revelation brought about the second stage, that armed jihad as a form of self-defense was permissible but not obligatory. The third stage is marked by the obligation to perform armed jihad, specifically as an act of self-defense against those that had initiated hostilities. The fourth and final stage called upon Muslims to wage armed jihad against non-Muslims, even outside the context of self-defense. The final stage has been a subject of much debate among scholars, even to this day.\(^6\)

**The Importance of jihad**

Jihad is necessary to defend against the onslaught of the enemies of Islam as well as in pursuing the interests of Islam. It is also regarded as the pinnacle of Islamic devotion.\(^7\)

However, classical scholars disagreed on whether greater or lesser jihad was more important. Those who considered greater jihad more important, argued that jihad of self-purification must precede participation in armed jihad (lesser jihad) so as to ensure the sincerity of one’s intention.\(^8\)

Those who attributed greater importance to armed jihad pointed out that Muslims martyred in armed jihad would be rewarded with the expiation of all sins, entry to God’s heaven without undergoing trial and the privilege to intercede for seventy relatives.\(^9\)

**Ruling of armed jihad**


A majority of classical scholars regarded armed jihad as fard kifayah, a communally obligatory act, in which the obligation is lifted from the community when a member of the community performs it.\(^{10}\)

However armed jihad becomes fard 'ayn, or personally obligatory, in the following circumstances:

1. When they are in the midst of a battle, Muslim fighters are prohibited from deserting the battlefield.  
2. Where the enemy forces have transgressed or occupied parts of Muslim land, Muslims living in the occupied land are obligated to retaliate by arms. If they are unsuccessful, the obligation then falls upon Muslims living within the vicinity and so on until the enemy has been successfully defeated. However, some scholars consider it fard kifayah for Muslims who are not in the immediate vicinity of the enemy-occupied territory.  
3. When there is a general mobilisation for armed jihad by a Muslim ruler, the obligation applies on all Muslims.\(^{11}\)

**On Fighters**

According to classical scholars, armed jihad is obligatory when a person meets the following criteria:

1. Muslim  
2. Male  
3. Free (defined as someone who is not enslaved)  
4. Of sane mind  
5. Has attained puberty

6. Has sufficient means to prepare himself and support his dependents
7. Has no physical disability
8. Has attained permission from his parents and creditors so that his debts would not become a liability to his family should he be killed in battle or become physically disabled.\(^{12}\)

Women may participate in non-combat duties such as in the treatment of the wounded and the preparation of food, subject to the permission of the authority and their respective mahram (immediate male guardians) or husbands.\(^{13}\)

However, when a Muslim territory is under attack, and armed jihad becomes fard ʿayn, all the abovementioned criteria are lifted. Children, women and slaves may be mobilised, or they may join the jihad without permission from their respective parents, mahram, husbands, creditors, and according to some scholars, the authority.\(^{14}\)

Classical scholars divided legitimate participants of armed jihad into two categories: murtaziqah (paid fighters) and muṭawwiʿah (volunteer fighters). The former are those who have been registered as fighters and receive payment for their services from the ghanīmah (war booty), while the latter are those who participate in armed jihad on a voluntary and ad-hoc basis. The volunteer fighters may be given some form of remuneration for their services based on the authority’s discretion.\(^{15}\) However they are all required to obey the policy and commands of the authority and military commanders. The fighters may themselves offer advice or feedback to the authority or commanders, where needed.\(^{16}\)

\(^{12}\)Ibid, 12, 14; Al-Sharbinīy, Mugnī Al-Muṭṭāj, 216-7; Al-Qurtubīy, Bidāyat Al-Muṭjahid, 278-9; Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Sharḥ Al-Kabīr, 361-2, 514-5; Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Mugnī, 375-9; Al-Sharbinīy, Mugnī Al-Muṭṭāj, 216-7; Al-Mawardīy, Al-Aḥkām Al-Suṭūnīyah, 36; Ibn Nuhās, Maḥsūrī Al-Ashwāq, 12; Khadduri, War and Peace, 83-6.
\(^{14}\)Al-Sharbinīy, Mugnī Al-Muṭṭāj, 219; Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Sharḥ Al-Kabīr, 376-7; Ibn Nuhās, Maḥsūrī Al- Ashwāq, 12.
\(^{15}\)Ibid, 216-7; Ibid, 361, 514-5; Sābih, Fīqh Al-Sunnah, 12; Al-Mawardīy, Al-Aḥkām Al-Suṭūnīyah, 36.
\(^{16}\)Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Sharḥ Al-Kabīr, 436-7.
On the enemy

The classical works have specified those who may be considered enemies and opposed in armed struggle as:

1. Non-Muslims who may be pagans (animists and idol worshippers) or the People of the Book (initially referring to the Christians and the Jews, but later including the Zoroastrians).
2. Apostates, those who have renounced Islam.
3. Bughah, those who are armed rebels defecting or challenging the authority.
4. Muḥārīb, those who are armed and involved in crimes, banditry or acts that may threaten the security of a country.

All classical scholars agreed that fighting hostile non-Muslims is a jihad, even if originally they were dhimmī (subjects of Muslim rule). They disagreed however on whether armed jihad can be waged against non-Muslims who do not have peace agreements with Muslims and are not hostile. The basis of this disagreement is whether non-Muslims were to be fought for their hostility or for their disbelief in Islam.17

All classical scholars also agreed that apostates should be offered the opportunity to repent and would only be dealt with through shari’ah law should they refuse. However should they become threatening and form an armed group, then it becomes an obligation for Muslims to subdue them with jihad.18 This ruling also applies to the Muslim bughah and muḥārīb. However it has been ruled that Muslim bughah should not be pursued if they are defeated in battle, unless there is a possibility that they would regroup and resume fighting. They should not be enslaved, their properties should not be confiscated as ghanimah, and non-Muslims should not be engaged in fighting them. As fellow

---


Muslims, bughāh should not be treated harshly for it may be that they might have legitimate political grievances for dissenting.\(^{19}\)

When dealing with an unjust ruler, classical scholars preferred to use counsel or to find ways to replace the ruler through non-violent means. An exception, however, is made when the ruler commits a flagrant act of apostasy.\(^{20}\)

**Rules before battle**

A majority of classical scholars held the view that armed jihad may only be waged under the banner of a Muslim authority.\(^{21}\) However, armed jihad may be carried out without the permission of the authority when Muslims are attacked in their territory. Other times when jihad may be carried out without official leave include when there is fear of escalating danger while waiting for permission to fight, when the authority has been clearly neglectful of the requirements of armed jihad, or when the authority has collapsed.\(^{22}\) Although maintaining an army for jihad is regarded as the primary duty of the authority, in the circumstances cited earlier, individuals may take the initiative and organise armed jihad.\(^{23}\) One example is the establishment of ribāt (frontier posts and guards) at the borders of Muslim lands.\(^{24}\)

---


Classical scholars ruled that armed jihad remains obligatory, even if the ruler is impious or religiously corrupt. The rationale is that more harm could result from disregarding armed jihad than the harm resulting from the ruler’s character flaws.\(^{25}\)

Nonetheless, classical scholars encouraged peaceful propagation so as to bring non-Muslims into the fold of Islam (through conversion) or to submit to Muslim rule.\(^{26}\) The Muslim authority has to ensure that non-Muslims are provided with the message of Islam. Alternatively, non-Muslims may become the subjects of a Muslim authority, or ratify peace agreements with the Muslims, while maintaining their faith. If non-Muslims are found to be hostile to Muslims, then the Muslim authority is required to make the appropriate declaration of war before initiating hostilities.\(^{27}\)

Some classical scholars considered making a declaration of war obligatory before waging an armed jihad, while others considered it as only recommended. A third opinion is that it is obligatory to make the declaration of war on those who have no knowledge of Islam while it is recommended to make the declaration for those with prior knowledge of Islam or are in a situation when Islam is commonly known.\(^{28}\)

**Rules during battle**

While Muslims are prohibited from indiscriminately attacking people or property, classical scholars disagreed on the specific groups of people and circumstances which may necessitate going against this rule. In general, non-combatants, women and children should not be targeted in armed jihad except when the enemy ruler is a woman. There is disagreement on the status of monks, the elderly, farmers and serfs\(^{29}\), but should they

---


contribute to a battle, either through direct or indirect means, the scholars agree that these people would immediately lose their immunity.\textsuperscript{30}

In the event that non-combatants and Muslims are used as human shields or in situations where it is difficult to differentiate them from enemy fighters, then it is permissible for Muslim fighters to attack, while taking measures to minimise harm on non-combatants and Muslims. Weapons are to be aimed at the fighters rather than the human shields, hostages or places of refuge for non-combatants.\textsuperscript{31} Restrictions are also placed on the targeting of properties, trees, farms, cattle and buildings, unless out of necessity or in the interest of war, as determined by the authority or military commander.\textsuperscript{32}

Desertion from battle is considered a major sin, according to classical scholars. Retreat and withdrawal are forbidden, except in the following situations:

1. When the balance of forces is numerically, or in terms of weaponry, unfavourable for the Muslim army.
2. When a rational assessment concludes that remaining in battle would cause greater harm to the interests of Muslims.
3. When the objective of the retreat is to regroup and reorganise the existing forces, or to wait for reinforcements or for the purpose of tactical deception.\textsuperscript{33}

Classical scholars prohibited the mutilation of dead enemy fighters as this goes against the belief in the sanctity of the human body as accorded in Islam.\textsuperscript{34}

\textsuperscript{30}Ibn Qudamah, \textit{Al-Mughni}, 534-5; Ibn Nuhás, \textit{Mashāri Al-Ashwaq}, 122-3; Kelsay, \textit{Arguing the Just War}, 118; Nawwaf Hayl Takrūrī, \textit{Al-ʾArūfīyyat Al-Istishshāhiyyāh Fī Al-Mīzān Al-Fīqhiyy}, (Dimashq: Dār Al-Fikr, 2003), 238-41.
\textsuperscript{34}Ibid, 555-6; Ibid, 128; Ibid, 452-3; Sabiq, \textit{Fiqh Al-Sunnah}, 41; Al-Qurtubi, \textit{Bidayat Al-Mujtahid}, 281; See also Khadduri, \textit{War and Peace}, 102-8; Lewis, \textit{Crisis of Islam}, 33.
While all types of weapons may be used, the Prophet had specifically prohibited the use of fire as a method of killing. Classical scholars also cautioned against any indiscriminate or disproportionate destruction in war.\textsuperscript{35}

**Rules after battle**

Armed jihad or hostility should cease, according to classical scholars, in the following situations:

1. When the Muslim army has achieved victory.
2. When the enemy has embraced Islam and ceased hostilities.
3. When the enemy has accepted a truce or peace agreement.
4. When al-amān (a guarantee of protection) has been granted.
5. When the Muslim army has unilaterally decided to end armed jihad or withdraw from battle.
6. When both parties have agreed to resolve the conflict through mediation or arbitration by a third party.\textsuperscript{36}

Classical scholars ruled that those who had immunity during battle (as discussed in the section on **Rules during battle**) should still be protected when the enemy has been defeated. This is discussed further in the section on prisoners of war.\textsuperscript{37} While classical scholars permitted the enslavement of women and children captured during battles\textsuperscript{38}, contemporary scholars find this ruling redundant today.\textsuperscript{39}


The territories of the defeated enemy would become part of Dār Al-Islām (Land of Islam), the administration of which will be discussed in a later section on war booty.

Non-Muslim inhabitants of the conquered territory may remain and retain their lands if they agree to become dhimmīy. By entering into this contract, they become the subjects of Dār Al-Islām with its respective rights and obligations. Among these obligations is the jizyah (poll tax). The elderly, those with physical disabilities or are poor are exempt from jizyah. Non-Muslims who choose to serve in the military, which is only compulsory for Muslims, are also exempt from jizyah.40

Most classical scholars ruled that only the People of the Book may become dhimmīy and be subject to the jizyah. This rule has been extended to include Zoroastrians. Other non-Muslims (i.e. pagans), had to embrace Islam or leave for non-Muslim territories – where they may be targets of armed jihad again.41 The Muslim authority is obligated to treat its dhimmīy subjects justly, protect them, and guarantee the freedom to practice their respective religions and laws within Dār Al-Islām.42 However the dhimmīy contract dissolves when the dhimmīy subject embraces Islam, flees to an enemy territory or commits acts that breaches the contract.43

Classical scholars ruled that only a Muslim authority may seek a truce and ratify peace agreements with enemies.44 These agreements should not exceed ten years or whatever is the discretion of the authority.45 It is considered a major sin for a Muslim to breach the

41 Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Mugnaī, 357-63, 382, 563-5; Al-Zuhaylī, Al-Fiqh Al-Islāmīy, 295-7; Ibn Nuḥās, Māshāriʿ Al-Maṣād, 122.
42 Sāḥīq, Fīqh Al-Sunnah, 46; Al-Zuhaylī, Al-Fiqh Al-Islāmīy, 450.
terms of a peace agreement. Truces and peace agreements may only be terminated when there has been a clear breach or when there is a real prospect of betrayal by the enemy, in which case the enemy must be explicitly notified.46

In order to ensure commitment to the terms, the agreement may include tributary payment to the Muslim authority or the exchange of collaterals. Scholars disagreed on whether it is permissible for Muslims to offer tributary payment to the enemy in order to effect a truce or peace agreement.47

Al-Amān is a guarantee of protection to non-Muslims who are not subjects of Dār Al-Islām, entering the territory for legitimate purposes such as business, social visit or diplomatic duties. The maximum period of stay under al-amān is one year.48

While there was a consensus among classical scholars that the Muslim authority has the power to offer al-amān, there was disagreement on whether individuals within Dār Al-Islām may offer al-amān without the permission of the authority. A majority of the scholars ruled that individuals have this authority as long as they are Muslim men or women who have reached puberty and are of sound mind. Al-Amān may be granted verbally, in writing or through actions that can be construed as such an accord. However, al-amān should not give rise to any harm to Muslims.49

The difference between al-amān and a truce or peace agreement is that the latter is an agreement to cease hostility while the former is a guarantee of security to travel into Dār Al-Islām. The latter does not necessarily entail the former, as the subjects of a territory with peace agreements would still need al-amān when travelling into Dār Al-Islām.50

50Ibid, 434; Sābiq, Fiqh Al-Sunnah, 73-4.
Management of war booty

Classical scholars have divided war booty into three types: 1) ghanīmah, 2) fay' and, 3) salb.

Ghanīmah refers to all properties, such as food, weapons and valuables, which are obtained from the enemy through direct combat, during or after the battle. The Qur’ān has laid down a clear injunction on the distribution of ghanīmah. Traditionally, one-fifth should be set aside and allocated for the following:

1. Fi sabil Allāh – for any purpose that serves the interests of Islam and Muslims.
2. The Prophet’s livelihood.
3. The Prophet’s family.
4. Orphans.
5. The poor.
6. Wayfarers. 51

After the death of the Prophet, allocations for the Prophet and his family were stopped. A minority of classical scholars suggested that the portion should be allocated, at the discretion of the authority, to the interest of Muslims.

The remaining four-fifth of ghanīmah is meant for the Muslim fighters. In general, one share is given to each non-cavalry fighter, while two shares are given to cavalry fighters as they have to maintain themselves as well as their mounts.

Classical scholars disagreed on the entitlement of ghanīmah to non-Muslims, women, children and slaves who contribute to the war effort. They proposed that the authority should provide these people with some token payment in recognition of their

51 The Quran, 8:41.
contribution. The value of the payment should not exceed the value of a share of ghanîmah.52

Fay' refers to any property obtained from the enemy through non-direct combat such as the enemy’s assets confiscated from civilian ships travelling in open seas. All fay’ were to be deposited in the Bayt Al-Mâl (public treasury) for the general interest of Islam and Muslims, under the discretion of the Muslim authority.53

Salb refers to weapons, body armour or any war equipment found on dead enemy soldiers, and according to some classical scholars, this includes their mounts. Provided that there is no objection by the authority, salb may be claimed by the person who killed or disabled the enemy soldier in the battle. Unclaimed salb is distributed as ghanîmah.54

Apart from these three types of booty, there is a special reward to motivate fighters to perform extraordinary combat operations during battle. This is known as nafl55 and it is encouraged by classical scholars that part of the booty be set aside for this. Mercenaries and those who are promised material rewards are not entitled to ghanîmah and fay’. They are entitled only to what is promised to them.56

A majority of classical scholars ruled that conquered lands should remain in the hands of the original owners and should not be included as ghanîmah. Instead kharaj (land tax), which would go into the Bayt Al-Mâl, should be imposed on the owner by the authority.

---


53 Ibid, 117; Ibn Qudamah, Al-Sharh Al-Kabîr, 537, 545; Sâbiq, Fiqh Al-Sunnah, 72-3; Khadduri, The Islamic Law of Nations, 106-12; Al-Qurtubi, Bidâyat Al-Mujtahid, 294-5.


However conquered lands without clear owners are to be retained by the Muslim authority. Classical scholars warned that it is a major sin to steal war booty.

Management of prisoners of war

All classical scholars have empowered the Muslim authority to manage prisoners of war in the following ways:

1. Unconditional release.
2. Release by ransom.
3. Release through the exchange of prisoners.
4. Enslavement.

While there was disagreement on whether the captured enemy combatants could be executed, a majority of classical scholars ruled that the Muslim authority has the discretion to determine their outcome. However, they agreed that captured women and children are not to be executed unless they were involved in the battle. Any ransom received for the release of prisoners will form part of the ghanîmah.

Modern scholars agree that enslavement is no longer relevant in today’s context after the worldwide abolition of slavery.

Participation of non-Muslims in armed jihad

---

58 Ibid, 106-8; Ibn Qudamah, Al-Mughni, 524; Sabiq, Fiqh Al-Sunnah, 63; Ibn Nuhâs, Mashhûr Al-Ashwaq, 118-9; Al-Mâwardî, Al-Ahkâm Al-Sultaniyyah, 47.
Classical scholars ruled that non-Muslims may participate in armed jihad whether on a voluntary basis or with the promise of rewards. However, non-Muslim subjects of Dār Al-Islām should not be mobilised for armed jihad unless it had been agreed upon in their dhimmī contracts. In such situations, those who are mobilised or volunteer to serve should be exempt from the jizyah.

In this respect, classical scholars ruled that it is permissible to enter into a defence alliance with non-Muslims or seek their assistance for armed jihad as long as there are no risks anticipated by their involvements.  

**Martyrdom**

Classical scholars regarded as martyrs any Muslim killed during armed jihad, whether in battle or subsequently from an injury. Martyrs are believed to be accorded with privileges and rewards that they will enjoy in the afterlife.

**Classical Shiite (Shī'ah) view of jihad**

All these views on jihad are based on the Sunni classical tradition. In general, the classical Shiite view of jihad does not depart too widely from the Sunni’s except in one important aspect. Classical Shiites hold the view that offensive jihad with the purpose of expanding the domain of Islam is not permissible after the occultation of the last (twelfth) imam. Traditionally, classical Shiites primarily directed jihad against bughāh.
in this case referring to the Sunni, until this was changed by Ayāt Allāh Khumaynī who directed jihad against their own ruler, namely the Shah of Iran, Muḥammad Riḍa Pahlavi (a.k.a Shah Reza Pahlavi).65

Justification for armed jihad

Despite their extensive contribution to Islamic jurisprudence, and exegeses or hadith commentaries, classical scholars did not fully discuss the justification for armed jihad. A particular ambiguous issue is whether it was justified to wage armed jihad just because the enemies are unbelievers. Similarly vague also their stand on the use of armed jihad for the expansion of Muslim rule into other territories, and for propagating Islam.

Sometimes classical works may be found to be contradictory. For example, most classical works emphasised that there should be no compulsion in religion, that Islam should be propagated through sound arguments, that the Muslim authority is obligated to give non-Muslims the freedom to practice their religions, and that in a battle, Muslims are prohibited from killing non-combatants, enemy fighters who cease fighting or are incapacitated. However, in these same works, or in the works by these same scholars, one could find conflicting messages. For example jihad has been defined as fighting non-Muslims so as to make the word of God supreme, even without any hostility on the part of non-Muslims. There are also instructions that the People of the Book should embrace Islam and submit to Muslim authority by paying jizyah or risk armed jihad. Pagans have to embrace Islam or face armed jihad, while the Muslim authority is obligated to wage jihad against non-Muslim territories at least once a year.66


66 Al-Qurtubiyy, Bidāyat Al-Mujtahid, 284-5; Ibn Nuhūs, Māshārī Al-Ashwāq, 11; Esposito, Unholy War, 35; Khadduri, War and Peace, 14-7, 59-60, 62-5, 144-5; Cook, Understanding Jihad, 30, 47; Kelsay,
Rudolph Peters attributes this perfunctory treatment and intellectual disinterest on the issue of justifications for jihad to the fact that most of the classical works were written during the golden period of Islamic civilisation when Muslims did not encounter any serious intellectual or political challenges. Hence there was little need for scholars to rationalise, defend or apologise for their views.67

The result of these ambiguous and contradictory ideas on jihad was the development of a variety of perspectives, interpretations and strands of thinking from scholars, both Muslims and non-Muslims, of subsequent periods, who attempt to understand jihad for academic purposes or to offer practical guidance.

Thus, most of the works on the justification of jihad that are available today have originated from contemporary scholars. Often these views represent the scholars’ views or their interpretation of classical works. The following sections will describe various contemporary thoughts on jihad that have generally departed from classical ideas. In most cases, they are attempts by scholars to reconstruct classical works or to respond to them within new contexts.68

Traditionalist Strand of Jihad

Traditionalist scholars are contemporary scholars who strive to maintain views that are found in classical works with minimal adaptations to modern contexts or thinking.69
According to traditionalists, the justifications for armed jihad are to oppose any incursions into Muslim land or hostilities against any Muslims, or for the propagation of Islam to all non-Muslims who had refused invitations to either become Muslims or submit to Muslim rule. Nonetheless, traditionalists do not practice or actively advocate aggressive jihad against non-Muslims. They rule that the jihad against the self must supersede armed jihad (lesser jihad).

Unlike extreme jihadists, traditionalists do not see the establishment of an Islamic state as central to Islamic teachings or that armed jihad is the way to achieve such a state.

Nevertheless, one should be wary of the truth claim of the classical position on the justification of jihad; indeed, it is merely an exposition of classical works by contemporary traditionalists. Accordingly, as much as the classical texts are too diverse in nature, the rulings of traditionalist scholars are often too ambiguous to afford a clear-cut resolution.

Reformist Strand of Jihad

A key characteristic of the reformist strand of jihad has been its attempt to adapt the classical ideas on jihad to the prevailing modern ideas of war and peace, and to some extent to international relations. Although reformists do not consider all ideas in classical works to be valid in the modern context, it still maintains reverence towards classical works. Some reformist scholars even seek to rationalise classical ideas in order to make them consistent with modern thinking.
Three main points on jihad have been found amongst reformists on the justification for jihad, the broader meaning of jihad and the status of armed jihad vis-à-vis other types of jihad.

Reformists justify jihad as a defense against any aggressions to life, property or territory. Some of the prominent Sunni figures who are of this view were two past Grand Shaykhs of Al-Azhar University, Shaykh Muḥammad ʿAbduh and Shaykh Maḥmūd Shaltūt, and ʿAbduh’s student, Rashīd Riḍa. However, some reformists do not limit defensive jihad to fighting against an invading force.⁷⁴

Saʿīd Ramadān Al-Būṭīy, among others, permits armed jihad to protect Islamic missionaries confronted with hostilities, and to reinstate the freedom of religion for Muslims faced with religious persecution.⁷⁵

Some reformists even make armed jihad incumbent upon Muslims to save all human beings threatened with gross and serious injustices such as genocide.⁷⁶ In their view, another legitimate reason for armed jihad is to retaliate against the breach of peace agreements.⁷⁷

Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khān, however, prohibited armed jihad so long as Muslims were able to perform their religious obligations. This was in particular for Muslims in India under British colonial rule. However, a majority of reformists rule that armed jihad was a legitimate, although not necessarily the only means, to oppose colonial rule.⁷⁸


⁷⁵Al-Būṭīy, Al-Jihād Fī Al-Islām, 113, 291.

⁷⁶Haykal, Al-Jihād Wa Al-Qittāl, bāb 3, 11; Esposito, Unholy War, 33; Mustafa Sībāʿī, Some Glittering Aspects of the Islamic Civilization, (Kuwait: International Islamic Book Center, date not cited), 100-2.

⁷⁷Peters, Jihad in Islam, 121.

⁷⁸Ibid, 123-4, 132.
To support their views, reformists assert that Islam seeks to win people over mainly through sound and rational arguments as enjoined in the Quran. Thus, the idea that Muslims are to wage armed jihad against non-Muslims to force them to embrace Islam or submit to the rule of Islamic authority is anathema to this principle. Reformist scholars insist that all Qur’anic verses that relate to jihad should be understood with due consideration to the chronology of revelation, and that verses calling for unconditional jihad against all non-Muslims must be read alongside verses that permit jihad only against aggression or for self-defence. Nonetheless this does not mean that Muslims cannot take any aggressive action against hostile parties. Al-Buṭṭiya believes that it is permissible to strike at the hostile party first if there is strong evidence of imminent aggression, not unlike the strategy of pre-emptive strikes seen today.

There are a number of Muslim scholars who hold this view of defensive jihad. Muḥammad Khayr Haykal, in his comprehensive study of jihad, has listed more than 20 names and books in this category.

Both reformist and classical scholars concur that the use of force is the exclusive right of the state. Al-Buṭṭiya asserts that armed jihad is not permissible in the absence of the proper authority but should not be used for the purpose of establishing such an authority. He points out that armed jihad was permitted only after the establishment of the first polity

---

83 Haykal, Al-Jihād Wa Al-Qitāl, bāb 3, 1-21.
by the Prophet in Medina which was established through skillful diplomacy rather than force of arms.84

The reformists use jihad in its wider context, stressing the importance of jihad against the self before armed jihad.85 Armed jihad is not seen as an act of supreme devotion. Depending on the context, non-violent jihad such as educational jihad, jihad for development, jihad against poverty or illiteracy, should be given greater priority.86

Hence, the reformist concept of martyrdom is not limited to death resulting from fighting against non-Muslims. Muḥammad ʿAbduh asserts that any person who dies while performing any good deed for the sake of Allāh is a martyr.87

The reformists argue that the basis of the relationship between Muslims and non-Muslims, or between Muslim and non-Muslim polities should be peace. All Muslim countries which are members of the United Nations are regarded to have entered into a peace agreement with other members and are bound by the United Nations’ charter and other international conventions. They support the classical view that waging armed jihad against corrupt and unjust rulers is forbidden.88 They seek to reinterpret concepts in classical works closely related to jihad such as the binary classification of polities, treatment of prisoners of war, dhimmī status and jizyah payments to suit modern contexts.

Reformists find that the binary classification of Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb is a product of the classical scholars’ interpretation of scriptural texts in relation to their political context rather than from any Qur’ānic injunction. Some reformists argue that this binary classification has become obsolete and should be discarded. Hence, law on

84 Al-Būṭy, Al-Jiḥād Fī Al-Islām, 196-201; Al-Zuhaylī, Al-Fiqh Al-Islāmiyy, 419; Ibn Qudāmah, Al-Mughfīl, 368-7; Al-Muwādī, Al-Akhārīn Al-Sultaniyyah, 35; Kelsay, Arguing the Just War, 101.
87 Al-Sharīf, Tarāwwūr Mafhīm Al-Jiḥād, 68-9.
jihad should be built upon the contemporary state system. The concept of neutrality, founded in modern international law, has been introduced into the study of Muslim interstate relations and jihad. Muhammad Hamidullah’s book *The Muslim Conduct of State* is an important reference.

In line with international conventions, reformist scholars rule that no prisoners of war should be killed, unless they are found guilty of committing offences that are punishable by death.

Reformists also regard the dhimmī status found in classical works as contingent to a bygone context. With changing realities, all non-Muslim citizens of Muslim countries should be recognised as co-citizens with equal rights and responsibilities. While the payment of jizyah has its basis in the Qur’ān and the practice of the Prophet, reformists argue that it as a matter for the authority’s discretion.

Reformist scholars who maintain the concept and vocabulary of dhimmī and jizyah in their works argue that these terms are not meant to make non-Muslims second-class citizens. They agree with the classical view that non-Muslims, other than the People of the Book, cannot be considered dhimmī and have to choose between Islam or the sword.

---


Unlike classical scholars, reformists believe that civilians and non-combatants should not be targeted in armed conflict, a view that is closely related to contemporary understanding and rooted in international convention. Thus, reformists reject the militant strand (discussed later) that permits the targeting of civilians. As a corollary to this, reformists condemn as war crimes any deliberate attacks on civilians committed by non-state armed groups or conventional forces. 94

The reformists, however, are divided on the issue of suicide bombings. Some have condemned the act based on the prohibition of suicide in Islam, while others permit its use against legitimate combatants or military targets. An exception is the Palestinian struggle against Israeli occupation where it is argued that the Palestinians have the right to oppose the atrocities committed against them. Moreover, Israeli society do not comprise of civilians in a conventional sense as individuals are armed and may be mobilised at any time for military service. 95

Some reformists have even called for a reconceptualisation of jihad or a review of its use in Muslim political practice.

In view of the abuse and misuse of the concept of jihad throughout history, Mohammed Ayoob, a Muslim Professor in International Relations has called for “the removal of the word jihad from the vocabulary of politics”. It was not sufficient, in his view, for the reformists to emphasise the importance of personal (greater) jihad above political (lesser and armed) jihad. Instead, “Muslims must totally abjure the use of the term “jihad” in the contemporary context”. The way to achieve this is “for the scholars of Islam to reach a consensus and declare publicly that the term “jihad” no longer applies in a world of nation-states where conflicts take place over issues of territory and ethnicity rather than on the basis of the simple dichotomy between dar-al-Islam and dar-al-harb”. 96

---

95 Ibid, 107-13; Takruri, Al-'Amalyyat Al-'Ishtishhadiyyah, 102-222; Cook, Understanding Jihad, 144-9; Kelsay, Arguing the Just War, 141.
96 Mohammed Ayoob, “Muslims could benefit by removing the word “jihad” from the vocabulary of politics,” YaleGlobal Newsletter, 26 September 2006.
A similar view was also expressed in *The Jakarta Post* by Guntur, an Indonesian alumnus of Al-Azhar University. He calls for the abrogation of the verses on war in the Qur’ān. He writes, “Islam acknowledges a method called *nasakh* or the abrogation of law. It is not a popular approach but we can take the step when certain stipulations are no longer applicable to the contemporary context... texts endorsing war and violence will still be there but we will regard them as historical facts.” He also urges Muslims to return to the Pre-Medinan (period before the Prophet’s migration from Mecca to Medina) teachings of Islam.\(^{97}\)

Abdullahi An-Na‘im, a Professor of Islamic Law who wrote the article “Why should Muslims abandon jihad?”, refers to a specific form of jihad defined as “the unilateral use of force by Muslims in pursuit of political objectives and outside the institutional framework of international legality and the rule of law in general.” He does not reject jihad in the form of self-defence as recognised by the international conventions and other reformists or the use of its vocabulary in politics, but integrates the rule of jihad in Islam into the available international conventions on war and peace with a view that both are compatible with one another. This, according to him, is in line with the present changes that require a rethink on the classical view of jihad.\(^{98}\)

Generally, reformist scholars view that classical works should be understood not only through textual analysis, but also through contextual understanding of different phases of the classical period.

For example, Al-Buṭṭiy, in reviewing the position of classical scholars on the justification of jihad, argues that jihad for defensive purposes was the position taken by a majority of scholars of the Hanafiy, Mālikiy and Hanbaliy schools of jurisprudence. Only the Shāfi’iy school viewed jihad as fighting against kufr (disbelief).\(^{99}\)

---


Reformists suggest that the binary classification of Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb had been used by classical scholars to ensure that the laws pertaining to jihad were applied to the appropriate social and political environment. The concept was also shaped by the period when Islamic law was being codified, during which time Muslims were dominant in the international political scene, and hence bore an air of superiority.

Reformists argue that the existence of Dār Al-Ḥarb does not necessarily mean a state of war with Dār Al-Islām. From a linguistic perspective, Dār Al-Ḥarb could also mean a land that could potentially be hostile unless it guarantees non-hostility through peace agreements. The term need neither be an indication of, or itself bring about hostility and animosity against non-Muslims.

Zaid Shakir argues that such nuances in classical works clearly rejects the idea of Muslims being at perpetual war with non-Muslims, and that jihad is essentially a battle against non-Muslims because of their disbelief.

On the classical view of dhimmī status and jizyah, the reformists rationalise that these were originally applied to defeated enemies and their subjects, and therefore not applicable to the non-Muslim citizens in contemporary Muslim countries. They point out the fact that during the early period of the Prophet’s migration to Medina and before the revelation on jizyah payment, an agreement known as the Medina Charter between the Prophet, the Jews and Pagan Arab tribes contained similar elements that characterised dhimmī status in most classical works. However, the non-Muslims in the agreement were regarded as one nation with the Muslims. It was only when the Jews breached the agreement that the verses on jizyah were revealed. Also, the hadith records that the Prophet did not impose jizyah on certain non-Muslims.

100 Jihad and the Islamic Law of War, 26-9.
101 Muhammad Haniff Hassan, Unlicensed to Kill: Countering Imam Samudra’s Justification for the Bali Bombing, (Singapore: Peace Matters 2006), 51.
104 Muhammad Asad, The Message of the Qur’an, (Gibraltar: Dār Al-Andalus, 1980), 262; Huwaydī, Muwāfiqūn Li Dhimmīyūn, 142-5; Jihad and the Islamic Law of War, 46-50; Al-Buṭṭy, Al-Jihād Fī Al-Islām, 131-7.
As mentioned before, the reformists believe that classical works cannot be understood fully without analysing the contexts from which they emerged. Similarly, reformist thinking on jihad is not without any influence from these contexts. In the late 19th and 20th centuries, reformist thinking was, to a large extent, a reaction to the orientalist scholars who painted a very negative image of Islam. The concept of jihad in classical works were depicted by orientalists as a justification for Islamic imperialism, discriminative treatments against non-Muslims and war; a concept which was regarded as anathema to the Western idea of a just war. This negative view of Islam was spread widely to Muslim countries through the Western education systems, media, publications and institutions of higher learning which were established or facilitated by colonial powers that occupied most of the Muslim countries then.\(^\text{105}\)

One such defensive reaction could be discerned from Shaltūt’s work when he wrote:

"After this exposé nobody can vilify Islam anymore or misinterpret the Koranic verses and maintain as some ignoramuses have done, that Islam has taken up fighting as a means of propagating its Mission and as an instrument for conversion, and that its Mission and creed were founded on and propagated by suppression and the use of force."\(^\text{106}\)

This can also be seen in ‘Abduh’s exchanges with Farah Anṭūn, a Lebanese journalist, novelist and political writer based in Egypt, and Gabriel Hanotoux, a French historian and Minister of Foreign Affairs (1894–1898).\(^\text{107}\)

Colonial powers had also brought modern Western ideas to Muslim countries. Despite their commitment to Islam, reformists Muslims have not been spared from these new ideas. They began to use modern vocabularies and concepts to illustrate classical ideas or


\(^\text{106}\) Shaltūt, “The Koran and Fighting,” 79; Esposito, Unholy War, 66.

\(^\text{107}\) Al-Sharīf, Tatāwur Mathān Al-Jihād, 62-71.
frame classical terminology in accordance to modern concepts borrowed from international law and other disciplines. An example is the use of the terms “civilian”, “combatant” and “non-combatant”, which were non-existent in classical terminology and conceptually different from the classical understanding of those who may or may not be killed.\textsuperscript{108}

Some of these contexts have had special impacts on reformist ideas. In the aftermath of the Sepoy Mutiny (1857) in India, Ahmad Khan forbade armed jihad against British colonial rule so long as the Muslims were not prevented from performing their religious obligations. Before the mutiny, Muslims enjoyed relatively privileged status in the army and the bureaucracy, relative to the Hindus under British rule. However, Muslims began to lose their positions to the Hindus when Muslim sepoys mutinied against their British commanders, due to dissatisfaction over their treatment and fuelled by many fatwā of jihad against the British rule that were propagated during that period.\textsuperscript{109}

Scholars regarded Ahmad Khan’s ideas as his attempt to reinstate Muslim loyalty towards British rule and to appease the rulers with the objective of reclaiming the status enjoyed by Muslims before the mutiny. This was in addition to his own belief that Muslims must change some aspects of their understanding of Islam if they are to have a better future. Fearing that Muslims would lose out to the Hindus if India gained independence, Khan became highly suspicious of the independence movement in India.\textsuperscript{110}

Unlike their early counterparts, the reformists of the late 20\textsuperscript{th} century had to respond primarily to the issue of religious extremism within the Muslim society which had led to revolts against rulers in the name of jihad. This forced the reformists such as Al-Buṭṭi, to reiterate the essentially defensive views of jihad in their works.\textsuperscript{111}

\textsuperscript{110} Ibid, 123-4, 132.
\textsuperscript{111} Al-Buṭṭi, \textit{Al-Jihād Fī Al-Īslām}, paxim.
Militant Strand of Jihad

The adjective "militant" here does not necessarily connote the tendency for violence. Here it is used to describe a strand of jihad that is strident and confrontational, and that seeks to achieve political or social change. The methods used could be extreme and sometimes violent. 112

Militants believe that Muslims are obligated to proactively wage jihad against non-Muslims until Islam rules supreme. They classify armed jihad into two: jihād al-daf (defensive jihad) and jihād al-talab (offensive jihad).

While the traditionalists also acknowledge the aggressive characteristics of jihad, the militants go further by viewing armed jihad as being superior to non-violent jihad. It is seen as the ultimate act of devotion, the pinnacle of Islamic teachings and the solution to the current subjugation of the Muslims by the West, which they attribute to the neglect of the duty of armed jihad. 113

Much of the militant view on jihad has been mentioned in Chapter 1 in the section describing jihadist ideology. Although jihadists make up the extreme group in this category, the illustration given also applies to non-jihadist militants. Although non-jihadist militants have not been known to be involved in actual armed activities against the perceived enemy or authority, or to belong to any jihadist organisation, they exist symbiotically with jihadists. Examples of non-jihadist militants were Sayyid Qutb and Abū Al-'Alā Al-Mawdūdi, the founder of Jamaat-e-Islami movement in Pakistan. They were important ideologues who have contributed to the development of jihadist ideology but there has been no evidence that they were ever involved in actual armed jihad.

To reiterate, jihadists believe that:

113 Peters, Jihad in Islam, 128, 160-1; Al-Sharif, Ta'awwur Mithān Al-Jihād, chapter 4 and 312.
1. Armed jihad is the ultimate act of devotion.
2. Unless otherwise stated, jihad means fighting against non-Muslims.
3. Jihad is a perpetual war against non-Muslims until they embrace Islam, or submit to Muslim rule.
4. The world is divided into two (binary) – Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb.
5. Waging armed jihad in the present day is considered fard `ayn for all Muslims until the rule of shari`ah prevails, all non-Muslim forces leave Muslim lands and all lands that were historically under Muslim rule are reclaimed.
6. Suicide bombing is a commendable act for seeking martyrdom.
7. It is legitimate to target non-Muslim civilians in order to avenge the blood of Muslim civilians and as punishment for their support of hostile non-Muslim governments.\textsuperscript{114}

The militants consider that it is legitimate to wage jihad against the rulers of Muslim countries today, because they believe that these leaders have become apostates for not ruling in accordance to the shari`ah. Muslim civilians who support their apostate rulers are also considered apostates and are therefore legitimate targets in jihad attacks.\textsuperscript{115}

The militants divide their enemies into two categories; the near and far enemy. The near enemies refer to local regimes which do not rule in accordance to the shari`ah and the far enemies are the non-Muslim countries in the West. There has been no consensus on which should be targeted first in jihad.\textsuperscript{116}

The militants once held the view that jihad against the near enemy must supersede jihad against the far enemy. They had even been prepared to suspend armed jihad against Israel and work towards establishing legitimate rule based on shari`ah so that jihad could be waged under the appropriate leadership. This view has since changed with the emergence of Al-Qaeda as the main proponent of global jihad. Al-Qaeda’s rationale is that the far

\textsuperscript{116} Ibid, 9-15; Ibid, 160-3, 175.
enemy is guilty of backing the local regimes, which have been suppressing local militant groups. If the far enemy is defeated, as the Soviet Union had been in Afghanistan, then the fall of the local regimes would be inevitable.\textsuperscript{117}

Fawaz Gergez, however, offers more nuanced explanations. His explanations, among others, relate to the internal conflict within militant circles such as competition for prominence among various groups and the remobilising of Muslims and the militants for a new cause after the jihad against local regimes had failed, and some of the militants reviewed their previous ideas and called for unilateral ceasefire.\textsuperscript{118}

The militants are usually very critical of the reformists and the traditionalists. They accuse the reformists of portraying a certain image of Islam just to placate non-Muslims, and they disapprove of the traditionalist preoccupation with non-violent jihad at the expense of armed jihad.\textsuperscript{119}

Although classical works remain as the militants’ primary source of reference in developing their ideas on jihad, they also differentiate themselves from classical scholars in many ways. They frame their ideas using modern vocabulary and concepts such as “state”, “revolution” and “vanguard”. It is also observed that the militants’ ideas bore a strong resemblance to modern revolutionary and leftist ideology.\textsuperscript{120}

The militants often reinvent and reinterpret classical ideas in order to achieve their grand political vision, i.e. to establish Islamic rule. Some examples are:

1. The classical view that permitted the killing of any person contributing to a war against the Muslims has been used as a justification in the present era for targeting civilians who support a government through their taxes or votes.

\textsuperscript{118}Gerges, \textit{The Far Enemy}, chapter 3.
2. The permissibility of extreme acts in the midst of a battle has been the justification for suicide bombing operations outside the battlefield.

3. The justification for sacrificing Muslims civilians while conducting military operations is based on the permissibility of killing Muslims in tatarrus situations, which is often discussed in classical works. Tatarrus is a situation where the enemy uses Muslim hostages as human shields to deter the Muslim army from attacking.

4. The justification for killing civilians is based on the principle of an eye for an eye, although in fact, such justification was never found in classical works.

5. The justification for seizing the properties of non-Muslim citizens in Muslim countries.

The context

The context, from which the militant viewpoint emerged, as illustrated in Chapter 1, is summarised below:

1. The militant viewpoint emerged from the movement for Islamic revivalism and independence during the 19th and early 20th centuries.

2. The harsh treatments, tortures and injustices experienced by Muslim reform activists by local regimes contributed to the mutation of reform movements into militant and jihadist groups.

3. The emergence of early jihadist movements can be traced to Egypt, when the Arab armies experienced a humiliating defeat during the 1967 Six-Day War.

4. The success of jihad in Afghanistan against the Soviet invasion provided fertile ground for proponents of militant jihad to validate and spread their ideas, widen their support base, transform their struggle to a global jihad, multiply their core members and gain confidence to take on the superpowers of the day. This event also provided a new lease of life for core jihadist movements in Egypt which had been effectively suppressed by Jamāl ´Abd Al-Nāṣir (and later by Ḥusnī Mubārak).

In addition to the above, the use of suicide bombs by Muslim militants can be traced to the 1983 attack on the American and French UN peacekeeping army in Lebanon by Shiite militia, following a fatwā issued by Shiite scholars. The ideas, practice and "know-
how” were later transferred to a group of Palestinian leaders who had been banished by Israel during the First Intifādah (1987-1993).\footnote{121 Bonney,\textit{ Jihad}, 310.}

Like any ideology, militant ideas evolved over time. In the beginning, their main target was the near enemy which, to them, referred to the “apostate” rulers of Muslim countries. This idea can be attributed to Muhammad ‘Abd Al-Salām Faraj, a leader of the Egyptian Al-Jihād, who wrote \textit{Al-Farīdah Al-Ghībah} (The Absent Obligation).\footnote{122 Faraj, \textit{The Absent Obligation}, 42-9.}

However, after decades of struggle with little success, and witnessing the defeat of the Soviet army in the hands of the mujahidin in Afghanistan, the militant idea of targeting the far enemy – chiefly by the United States and Israel – began to take centrestage. Proponents of this view attributed their failure in defeating the near enemy to the constant support the near enemy received from the distant enemy. This strand was popularised by Al-Qaeda through its emir, Bin Laden, the main protagonist of the global jihad movement until his death in 2011.\footnote{123 Gerges, \textit{The Far Enemy}, chapter 3.}

According to Peters, the militant viewpoint is characterised by its refusal to acquiesce to the context, its self-assertiveness, and unbending commitment to the ideals which has led them to wage jihad against all who stand in their way.\footnote{124 Peters, \textit{Jihad in Islam}, 132-3.}

Peters asserts that both the reformist and militant viewpoints represent two different reactions to Western influence in the Muslim world. The former is defensive while the latter is assertive.\footnote{125 Ibid.}

The ideologues
To better understand the militant idea on jihad, it would be appropriate to look at the key figures and the contexts which have contributed to its evolution.

\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{121} Bonney, \textit{Jihad}, 310. \par\textsuperscript{122} Faraj, \textit{The Absent Obligation}, 42-9. \par\textsuperscript{123} Gerges, \textit{The Far Enemy}, chapter 3.\par\textsuperscript{124} Peters, \textit{Jihad in Islam}, 132-3. \par\textsuperscript{125} Ibid.}
Some of the figures who have had profound impacts on its ideology are Ibn Taymiyah, Muḥammad ibn Ṭāhā, Rashīd Riḍā, Ḥasan Al-Banna, Al-Mawdūdī, Sayyid Qutb, Muḥammad ʿAbd Al-Salām Faraj and ʿAbd ʿAllāh ʿAzzām.126

The following sections will offer biographical accounts of these individuals, with special attention to their ideology and their contributions to militant ideas on jihad.

Ibn Taymiyah (1263–1328)

Taqī Al-Dīn ibn Taymiyah was a respected 13th-century Sunni scholar of the Hanbālī School. He has had the most influence on modern radical ideology.127 The ideologues of the modern period revere him and make references to his work. He is often quoted by Faraj in his influential book, The Absent Obligation. ʿAzzām wrote, “Four people influenced me in my life; Ibn Taymiyah on creed and theology, Ibn Al-Qayyim on etiquette, Al-Nawawī on jurisprudence and Sayyid Qutb on worldview.”128

Ibn Taymiyah had issued a fatwa making it legitimate to wage jihad against the Muslim Mongols who were then ruling Baghdad and were threatening other Muslim lands. Ibn Taymiyah argued that since the Mongols ruled by their customary Yāsā laws instead of the shariʿah, he was of the opinion that their status as Muslims was nullified, based on the Qurʿānic verse that states that whoever governed by laws other than those revealed by God has fallen into disbelief. It thus became obligatory for Muslims to defend and liberate their lands through armed jihad.129 This fatwā became the foundation for many ideas which mutated into jihadism. Because belief in Allah as the only God requires Muslims to accept that He is the only Being that deserves their devotion and submission; observing the five pillars of Islam and abiding by the shariʿah in its entirety, Ibn Taymiyah concluded in the fatwā:

126 Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 17-9, 29; Gilles Kepel, The Roots of Radical Islam, 5 and 23.
129 Esposito, Unholy War, 45-6.
• It is incumbent upon all Muslim rulers i.e. the Mongols, to implement the shar'i ah, especially those rulings concerned with the social, political and economic sphere.

• Since the full implementation of the shar'i ah requires political authority, religion and politics cannot be separated.

• To replace the shar'i ah with other rules (like the Yasa) is considered an act of kufr (disbelief) because it contradicts the basic concept of belief in, and submission to, Allah.

• Since Islam came to abolish kufr, it is incumbent upon Muslims to bring about this abolishment by waging armed jihad against the Mongols.

Ibn Taymiyah's fatwā and the ideas mentioned above subsequently became the basis for the jihadists' militancy. The jihadists saw the parallel between the Mongols and the contemporary regimes in Muslim countries. It was thus not only legitimate but also obligatory to wage armed rebellions against all regimes in Muslim countries who ruled by secular law. 130

Ibn Taymiyah made a departure from the dominant classical view in that he considered jihad as the most important fard 'ayn after belief and that it is the best of all devotions. He also brought into prominence the view held by a minority of classical scholars that jihad should be waged against non-Muslims as well as sinful Muslims and heretics. A few scholars also suggest that Ibn Taymiyah had extended this view to include even the Muslims who neglected their jihad duty. 131 Hence, Ibn Taymiyah is seen as being responsible for planting the seeds of revolutionary violence. 132

Ibn Taymiyah was not just a scholar who wrote on jihad as an intellectual exercise. His role in mobilising Muslims against the threat of the Mongols provides inspiration to

130 Benjaman and Simon, Sacred Terror, 43, 50; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 19-22; Esposito, Unholy War, 45-6; Gilles Kepel, The Trail of Political Islam, 47.
131 Ibn Taymiyah, "The Religious and Moral Doctrine of Jihad," Jihad in Classical and Modern Islam, Rudolph Peters, 47-9; Benjaman and Simon, Sacred Terror, 49-50; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 20-1; Kelsay, Arguing the Just War, 126; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 205.
132 Walid Pharees, Future Jihad (Hampshire: Palgrave, 2003), 56; Benjaman and Simon, Sacred Terror, 50; Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 50-1.
modern militants. His participation in battle has also provided greater credibility to his ideas on jihad.

Ibn Taymiyyah was a forceful proponent of returning to the way of the original salaf (pious predecessors) – a way characterised by strict adherence to the literal interpretation of the Qurʾān and the sunnah (Prophetic tradition), and the opinions of scholars with sound arguments that conform to the textual inference of the Qurʾān and the sunnah. His harsh criticism of the šūfi practitioners and rationalist thinkers have influenced the way modern salafiy (followers of the way of salaf) critique anyone who does not subscribe to their views.133

However not everyone who has been influenced by Ibn Taymiyyah or who is a salafiy is a militant. In fact, one could find many ideas from within Ibn Taymiyyah’s works that would discredit contemporary militant ideas on jihad.134

Muhammad ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb (1703-1792)

Muhammad ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb was an 18th-century scholar from Najd in the central Arabian Peninsula in what is today Saudi Arabia. He is the founder of the movement, commonly known as Wahhabism that is closely associated with the official religious establishment in present-day Saudi Arabia.135

Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb was responsible for reviving Ibn Taymiyyah’s ideas after a lapse of 500 years. He brought these ideas to the centre of Islamic theology, eventually making a profound impact on the global Muslim community. The growth of the Wahhabi movement was accomplished with the help of Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb’s ally, Muhammad ibn Saʿūd, and later with the support of Ibn Saʿūd’s heirs who now rule Saudi Arabia.136

133Ibid, 54-5.
134Bonney, Jihad, 121-6.
135Pharees, Future Jihad, 73; Esposito, Unholy War, 6, 47; Benjaman and Simon, Sacred Terror, 50-4; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 50-1.
136Esposito, Unholy War, 47; Mandaville, Global Political Islam, 44, 245-7; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 22.
Although both Ibn 'Abd Al-Wahhāb and Ibn Taymīyah were, according to scholars, bent on using violence in establishing true Islam, the former was more concerned with purifying the rituals and social domains of the Muslim community, whereas the latter was preoccupied with the political turmoil during his lifetime. Ibn 'Abd Al-Wahhāb did not have the political experience of Ibn Taymīyah. Moreover, in the late 18th century, the House of Saʿūd was not regarded as a rightful authority to sanction any armed jihad, due to the existence of the Ottoman caliphate. In the beginning, Ibn 'Abd Al-Wahhāb and his followers operated like a vigilante movement to purify the Muslim community from what they perceived as superstitious and heretical practices, as well as against tribes that competed with the House of Saʿūd for power in the Arabian Peninsula.

While Ibn Taymīyah's jihad could be regarded as self-defense, sanctioned by a righteous authority, i.e. the Mamlūks, the jihad led by the House of Saʿūd and its Wahhabi ally against the Ottoman authority in Arabia seemed more like an armed rebellion by a local militia against the ruling caliphate.

In this respect, it could be said that the jihad practices of Ibn 'Abd Al-Wahhāb and his followers were a departure from the dominant classical view that firstly forbade the use of violence as a means for social reform unless mandated by the authority, and secondly armed rebellion against a legitimate Muslim ruler. This provides insights into the prevalent vigilante culture and rebellious tendency seen in contemporary militant/extremist groups.

Ibn 'Abd Al-Wahhāb's ideas were to influence the radical Muslim reformists who sought refuge in Saudi Arabia from countries that persecuted them such as Egypt and Syria almost a century later. They were welcomed by the regime, filling manpower needs due to the rapid development in the country following the 1973 oil crisis, and were seen as a counter to the Nasserist socialism that was threatening the Saudi monarchy.

---

137 Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 25.
138 Kelsay, Arguing the Just War, 127; Bonney, Jihad, 160-1.
139 Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 23-4.
140 Ibid, 25; Esposito, Unholy War, 7; Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 50-2, 62, 73, 118-20.
During this period, cross-fertilisation occurred between the reformists and the politically conservative Saudis. The result was the adoption of Wahhabi salafism by the activists in their theology and the cultivation of the culture of social and political activism among local Saudis. The promotion of this cross-fertilised idea as a counter-weight to Nasserist socialism in Muslim countries contributed subsequently to the emergence of Islamic movements that were founded on strong Wahhabi-salafiy theology and modern socio-political activism.¹⁴¹

*Muḥammad Rashīd Riḍa (1865–1935)*

Muḥammad Rashīd Riḍa was a Syrian Muslim scholar. He was the most prominent student of Muḥammad ʿAbduh, a Muslim reformist and Grand Shaykh of Al-Azhar. Riḍa settled in Egypt in 1897 to support ʿAbduh in his reform work.

In the beginning, Riḍa’s ideas mirrored his mentor’s reformist thinking. However, he later became an admirer of Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb, and took on a more conservative and traditional outlook. He believed that the reformists had gone too far in their attempt to revive the Muslim ummah and may have caused Muslims to lose their faith due to their Westernised thinking and lifestyles. Just like Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb and Ibn Taymiyyah, Riḍa called on all Muslims to return to the ways of the salaf (pious predecessors) and to live entirely by the sharīʿah.¹⁴²

Although Riḍa was not known to have promoted militant jihad ideas or indeed incited jihad, he was important for promoting Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb’s ideas, and as a result, also those of Ibn Taymiyyah to early Muslim reform activists. It was against this backdrop the militant strand emerged.¹⁴³

¹⁴³Ibid, 248.
Mary Habeck writes that Riḍa was the person who rediscovered Ibn Taymiyyah. This, opened up the opportunity for the Mongol analogy as a justification for jihad against a Muslim regime.¹⁴⁴

According to Daniel Benjamin and Steven Simon, Riḍa employed the term jahiliyyah, which was used by the Prophet Muḥammad to refer to the state of widespread ignorance and unbelief before revelation, to describe the state of the Muslims in his time. Riḍa held the view that governance that was not in accordance with the sharī‘ah was kufr (disbelief). This was the same idea that has become the basis of armed jihad against local regimes by militant groups.¹⁴⁵

Riḍa was also a teacher for Ḥasan Al-Bannā, whose role we shall turn to now.

Ḥasan Al-Bannā (1906–1949)
An Egyptian school teacher, Ḥasan Al-Bannā was the founder of the Muslim Brothers (founded in 1928). The organisation was a popular Islamic movement that had branches in many countries. It has influenced almost all other Islamic movements founded after it and it is presently the largest Islamic movement.¹⁴⁶

Al-Bannā was regarded by many scholars as being responsible for the spread of Islamism and Islamist movements in the 20th century. Islamism was different from jihadism and not all Islamist were jihadists. The brand of Islamism promoted by Al-Bannā and the Muslim Brothers held the view that Islam was a comprehensive religion where politics and religion cannot be separated. They believe that it is necessary to establish an Islamic state to realise Islam as a way of life, that Islam is the solution to all problems and that Muslims should return to the fundamental sources of Islam, which are the Qur’ān and the sunnah. These were also the foundational ideas of jihadists. Hence, the Islamism promoted by Al-Bannā and the Muslim Brothers provided the intellectual groundwork

¹⁴⁴Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 28.
¹⁴⁵Ibid.
¹⁴⁶Ibid, 68, 85, 89, 100; Esposito, Unholy War, 50; Pharees, Future Jihad, 64-5; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 20.
which subsequently metamorphosed into jihadism. Indeed, many early militant and jihadist groups sprang from the the Muslim Brothers as well as other Islamist movements. These movements include the Al-Jamāʾah Al-Islāmiyyah (Egypt), Al-Jihād (Egypt), Al-Takfīr Wa Al-Hiijrah (Egypt), Ḥamās (Palestine) and Ḥizb Al-Taḥāṣir (Palestine).

Although Riḍa revived the ideas of Ibn Taymīyah and Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb, Al-Banna is credited for popularising their ideas through the Muslim Brothers. Mary Habeck has credited Al-Banna for rediscovering all three ideologues; Ibn Taymīyah, Ibn ʿAbd Al-Wahhāb and Riḍa. 147

Al-Banna’s jihad ideas were largely neo-classical. To him, non-violent means must be explored before violent ones and armed jihad can only be waged after an extensive preparation in all dimensions i.e. spiritual, political and economical. 148 However, he did not hold the view that armed jihad should be limited to defence. 149

Al-Banna categorised armed jihad against the occupiers of Muslim lands as fard ʿayn. With no apologies, he saw armed jihad as an integral part of Islam in order to save mankind from the ignorance of disbelief, free them from “enslavement”, and guide people to the truth of Islam. He dismissed the view that jihad was a means of converting people to Islam and colonising non-Muslims as the attempt of orientalists to tarnish and distort the true teachings of Islam. 150

Some scholars suggest that he even put his ideas on jihad into practice through the military and secret organisations which he formed and operated in Egypt against the British, and in Palestine against Israel. 151

---

147 Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 29.
150 Ibid, 235-9; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 32; Esposito, Unholy War, 51-3.
151 Ibid, 30-5.
There is no doubt about Al-Banna’s significance in the genealogical chain of militant jihad ideology. This can be seen from the fact that the early jihadist groups like the Egyptian Al-Jamā‘ah Al-Islāmiyyah and Al-Jihād emerged from the Muslim Brothers’ milieu and the similarities in the worldview of the militants, Al-Banna and the Muslim Brothers organisation he founded. However, it must be pointed out that putting Al-Banna in the militant jihad ideological genealogy does not imply a causal link for three main reasons.

Firstly, many more non-violent Islamic movements than jihadist groups have been inspired by Al-Banna’s ideas. Unlike Muḥammad Ḥabīb Al-Salam Faraj, Al-Banna’s ideas are open to different interpretations. Secondly, and to reinforce the first reason, the Muslim Brothers founded by Al-Banna has successfully evolved into a mainstream and non-violent movement since 1965, and has become one of the strongest critics of Al-Qaeda’s militant jihad ideology. The Muslim Brothers has posed serious challenges to Al-Qaeda’s attempts at winning over Muslim audiences. This explains some of the harsh criticisms against them by the militants, as exemplified by Ayman Al-Zawahiriy’s book Al-Ḥaṣād Al-Mur. Thirdly, the fact that Al-Banna and the Muslim Brothers were harshly denounced means any person who subscribes to the Brothers’ ideology would not be easily accepted into the fold of militant groups, and the harsh criticism against them would naturally turn them off militant jihad propagated by jihadists.

Thus, in today’s context, Al-Banna’s ideas propagated by the Muslim Brothers function more as a barrier to militancy and extremism than as a conveyor belt. Some researchers...

---


would even attribute the Egyptian Al-Jamā‘ah Al-Islāmiyah’s denouncement of violence since 1997 to the influence of the Muslim Brothers’ non-violent Islamist ideology.\textsuperscript{155}

	extit{Abū Al-A`lā Al-Mawdūdíy (1903–1979)}

Abū Al-A`lā Al-Mawdūdíy was an Indian-born Muslim thinker. After the partition of the Indian sub-continent he migrated to Pakistan where he worked as a journalist and wrote many books on Islam and politics. He founded the Jamaat-e-Islami in Pakistan, a movement analogous to the Muslim Brothers in Egypt.

Al-Mawdūdíy had many ideas in common with Al-Bannā and was also regarded as the person responsible for providing the ideological and intellectual foundation for Islamism.\textsuperscript{156}

In addition to being a pioneer of Islamism, he is important for his influence on Sayyid Qūṭḥ, and his role in the spread of Islamism in the Indian sub-continent through Jamaat-e-Islami, and subsequently in Western countries via the migration of Indo-Pakistani Muslims.

Scholars credit Al-Mawdūdíy for introducing and/or promoting the following concepts:

- Ḥākimīyah: Allah is the only sovereign. Only Allah holds the right to legislate what is ḥalāl (permissible) and ḥarām (forbidden). Man as Allah’s vicegerent is only responsible to rule and judge in accordance to Allah’s decree. Otherwise he is claiming what is the exclusive right of Allah, the consequence of which is kufr (disbelief).

- Jāhīfiyah: This refers to a state of ignorance where unislamic practices prevail. Although the term originally referred to the state of the Arabs before the prophethood


of Muhammad, Al-Mawdūdi believes that its meaning is not limited to any time or place.¹⁵⁷

- Vanguard: Core cadres of the Islamic movement must be produced through the process of extensive tarbiyah (education and training) in order to lead Islamic reform successfully.¹⁵⁸

Al-Mawdūdi also wrote a small book on jihad which held the same unapologetic view as Al-Banna. However, he regarded jihad as being both offensive and defensive. It is offensive because its objective is to liberate humanity from state of jahiliyyah to Islam, and it is defensive because of its role in defending humanity from the sway of jahiliyyah.¹⁵⁹

But Al-Mawdūdiy’s biggest contribution to the development of the militant strand of jihad was his influence on Sayyid Qutb.

Sayyid Qutb (1906–1966)

Sayyid Qutb was an Egyptian thinker and a leading ideologue for the Muslim Brothers in the 1950s and 1960s. He was hanged in August 1966 for allegedly plotting to overthrow the government and assassinate Jamāl ‘Abd al-Nasīr, the president of Egypt.

Qutb is regarded as the ideological godfather of Muslim revolutionaries. According to Gilles Kepel, Qutb’s book Mu‘ālim Fī Al-Ṭarīq (Milestones) is the manifesto for the

¹⁵⁷ The same concept was also introduced by Rashid Riḍa. It is not clear, however, whether the similarity is by coincidence or one was influenced by the other.


jihadists’ struggle, and responsible for the intellectual gestation of radical Islamist movements from the 1960s onwards. 160

Another of Qutb’s work that is equally influential is his exegesis of the whole Qur’an entitled Fī Zilāl Al-Qur’ān (Under the Shades of the Qur’an) which brought together the ideas of all the idealogues discussed earlier. Kepel suggested that Qutb was particularly influenced by Al-Mawdūdi from whom he borrowed the concept of ‘ubūdiyyah (devotion, submission and obedience to Allah only) and hākimiyah. 161

Both Milestones and Qutb’s exegesis were written during his imprisonment from 1954 to 1964. While in prison, he endured brutal treatment and torture. This experience hardened his hostility towards the Egyptian regime. 162

In Milestones, Qutb asserts that societies and their regimes are in the state of jāhiTiyah because they are not manifesting true ‘ubūdiyyah and submitting to the hākimiyah of Allah. In short they are on the verge of kufr. The solution, according to Qutb, is to wage jihad by first carefully grooming individual Muslims with the correct understanding of Islam into what he called the Qur’ānic generation, which are in essence similar to the first generation of Muslims. These individuals are to be the vanguards that would bring down jāhiTiyah in all its manifestations, after which true Islam can be reestablished. 163 Qutb’s diagnosis of the current state of Muslims and essentialist analysis had tremendous influence on the worldview of the militants. 164

Although Qutb agreed that jihad was not limited to armed struggle and acknowledged the role of non-violent jihad, he was not apologetic about the necessity of armed jihad in the

161Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 26, 34. See Mandaville, Global Political Islam, 78-80; see Esposito, Unholy War, 59; see Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 38-9.
162Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 25.
163Esposito, Unholy War, 58-61; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 36; Mandaville, Global Political Islam, 78-83; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 37-8; Lewis, Crisis of Islam, 68.
164Ibid, 58; Ibid, 35; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 35; Roy, Failure of Political Islam, 41, 60; Gerges, The Far Enemy, 5-6.
struggle against jahifiyah even if it was not a defensive jihad. He argues that waging offensive armed jihad against the forces of jahifiyah is legitimate because it is not intended to subjugate or enslave people but to bring them back to their natural state of Islam. He believed jihad is not a means of converting people to Islam, but a means of creating an environment where true freedom of choice could exist.165

Although Qutb did not explicitly recommend the use of bombs and weapons, his ideas, packaged in revolutionary language, radicalised a segment of Muslim youths who were extremely angered by their regime’s brutality towards Muslim activists and were disillusioned by the mainstream Muslim Brothers’ plodding strategy. For these youths, it was a call to arms.166

With the lack of ideological leadership after the death of Al-Banna, many youths were drawn to Qutb’s ideas. His simple diagnosis of the problem and his articulate solution filled the vacuum. In their eyes, his steadfastness in the face of brutal torture and his martyrdom brought to mind the suffering of early Muslims who were persecuted by the jahifiyah inhabitants of pagan Mecca at the dawn of Islam.

The reverence that Qutb gained from the Muslim youths made him the lens through which they understood Al-Banna and Al-Mawdufiy. However, Al-Banna’s approach, which favoured gradual change through da’wah (peaceful propagation of Islam), and Al-Mawdufiy’s non-violent open political participation were skipped over in favour of Qutb’s revolutionary and rejectionist stand. In this regard, Qutb is regarded as the person who reconstructed and radicalised the ideas of both these figures.167

Muhammad ‘Abd Al-Salam Faraj (1954–1982)

Muhammad ‘Abd Al-Salam Faraj was an Egyptian founding member of the Al-Jihâd organisation. He was executed in April 1982 for his role in the assassination of Anwar

165Ibid, 60; Roy, Failure of Political Islam, 41, 60; Mandaville, Global Political Islam, 78-83, 252.
166Esposito, Unholy War, 56, 58; Mandaville, Global Political Islam, 81; Kepel, Roots of Radical Islam, 29.
167Ibid, 25; Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 24-7, 35-6; Esposito, Unholy War, 56-9; Habeck, Knowing the Enemy, 25.
Sadat, the President of Egypt. His influence on militant thinking came through his book *The Absent Obligation*. The book is regarded as the “constitution” for Al-Jihād and is used as reference for many other jihadist groups.\(^{168}\)

In his book, Faraj made an assessment of all Islamic movements before him such as the Muslim Brothers and Al-Takfir Wa Al-Hijrah. He concluded that the approaches taken previously, i.e. political participation, social welfare and the policy of gradual change through da’wah, hijrah and education, were all futile. According to him, some of these approaches contradicted the teachings of Islam and the fact that none of them had succeeded in bringing down jahifiyah seemed to affirm his assessment.\(^{169}\)

He suggested that the way to stop the Muslim decline was to return to the true Islam as exemplified by the early (salaf) generation and advocated by Islamist ideologues before him, as well as by opposing the jahifiyah forces. Armed jihad, according to him, was the only effective way to bring down the jahifiyah after which the Islamic state, with the full implementation of the shari’ah, could be established. Faraj considered jihad as the sixth pillar of Islam.\(^{170}\) Kepel sees Faraj’s book as not only a theological or ideological work, but also as a programme for Muslim activist action against “infidel” rulers.\(^{171}\)

Faraj, who was clearly influenced by Ibn Taymiyah, often cited the scholar’s fatwā on the obligation of armed jihad against the Mongols. He considered the ruling Egyptian regime and its apparatus as the ‘modern Mongols’ who were not ruling in accordance to the shari’ah. Thus, his book represents a new and important shift in militant ideology since *Milestones*. Islam, in his mind, can only be established from the ruins of jahifiyah and jahifiyah can only be brought down by armed jihad revolution.\(^{172}\)


Before the emergence of Al-Qaeda, jihadist movements focused their jihad struggle on the near enemy, defined as the immediate ruling regimes where jihadist movements existed. Faraj argued that jihad against the near enemy must supersede the far enemy because of its proximity and also that jihad against the far enemy could only be waged under a proper Islamic authority, i.e. after the establishment of the Islamic state. Even jihad against Israel in Palestine, according to Faraj, must wait until an Islamic state is established in Egypt. 173

All the above scholars lay the foundation upon which ’Azzām built his jihad ideas. And this is the subject of the next chapter.

Concluding Comments

Diverse views of jihad

The strands of jihad ideas can be categorised as broad and ideal types. In reality, there are subcategories for each strand as members of each strand disagreed among themselves when it came to the finer points. 174

However, it is not the objective of this review to identify the differences within each strand. Rather, this review seeks to provide a categorisation of jihad ideas based on shared principles held by influential members of each strand, reflecting the diversity and dynamism among Muslims.

Any researcher on Islam has to acknowledge that the differences of opinion in Islamic theology and jurisprudence are the rule, and that consensus (ijmā') is always an exception. From the Qur’ānic perspective, this is because God, in his wisdom, has decreed that diversity and plurality shall be the law of the universe. More specifically, the Qur’ān states that there will always be divergence of views and differences among

mankind. The Qurʾān says, "If thy Lord had so willed, He could have made mankind one people: but they will not cease to dispute. Except those on whom thy Lord hath bestowed His Mercy: and for this did He create them..." (The Qurʾān, 11:119).

The verse does not preclude divergence and differences among Muslims in understanding Islam and the Qurʾān in particular. It is in this light that the different strands of jihad ideas should be understood. In fact, divergent views on jihad have not been restricted to contemporary Muslims.\textsuperscript{175}

A majority of scholars of the subject have agreed that jihad is fundamentally complex and due to this complexity, it has become a much contested area of study.\textsuperscript{176} Esposito finds that Muslims have consistently discussed and disagreed about jihad. Not only are there diverse views on jihad at any particular time, its definition has also evolved over a period of time.\textsuperscript{177} Thus, according to Richard Bonney, no single, all-embracing concept of jihad has existed and has been applied throughout the long course of Islamic history.\textsuperscript{178}

In this regard, any attempt to single out one trend or viewpoint and use it to generalise the Muslim stand on jihad must be treated with caution. In other words, any study of jihad must reflect the diversity of views.\textsuperscript{179}

\textit{Factors contributing to the diversity}

Scholars have identified three factors, namely text, context and actors, which contribute to the diverse strands of jihad ideas.\textsuperscript{180}

Text refers to the scripture upon which all matters pertaining to Islamic theology and jurisprudence are built upon. Specifically, it refers to the Qurʾān, the primary reference agreed upon by all Muslims. Scholars agree that the Qurʾān’s position on jihad as a whole

\textsuperscript{175}Firestone, \textit{Jihad}, vi; Donner, "Islamic Conceptions of War," 32.
\textsuperscript{176}Lawrence, "Holy War," 142; Bonner, \textit{Jihad in Islamic History}, 153; Euben, "Killing (For) Politics," 21.
\textsuperscript{177}Firestone, \textit{Jihad}, vi, 76-9, 101, 113; Esposito, \textit{Unholy War}, 64; Cook, \textit{Understanding Jihad}, 1.
\textsuperscript{178}Bonney, \textit{Jihad}, 9-11, 399, 401.
\textsuperscript{179}Ibid; Firestone, \textit{Jihad}, 4.
\textsuperscript{180}Bonner, \textit{Jihad in Islamic History}, 15-6, 115.
is far from coherent. It talks about peaceful propagation but also calls for armed jihad against the disbelievers. It enjoins patience and forgiveness in the face of persecution and harassment, but also makes self-defence obligatory. There are verses on jihad for self-defence, but there are also verses that allow unconditional jihad against unbelievers.181

Any attempt to understand the Qur’anic position on jihad would necessitate the linking of all these verses by way of intellectual interpretation and methodological reasoning. Since human interpretations are inherently diverse, the hope for producing a single coherent view on jihad seems futile.182

Indeed, Muslim scholars acknowledge that in order to ensure Islam’s relevance across time and space, the Qur’an was deliberately revealed with verses that are ghayr-muḥkamāt (none definitive) allowing for various interpretations and understandings. This allows Muslim scholars to apply the teachings of the religion in accordance to the changing contexts. They also allow Muslim scholars to deduce different rulings on one issue.183

The second contributing factor to the diverse strands of jihad ideas is the context, which refers to the political, social or economical environment within which an interpretation of jihad is made.184 Indeed, the verses of the Qur’an were revealed, on many occasions, in response to specific events or contexts. During the Prophet’s lifetime, pre-existing practices that were seen as good were endorsed and eventually incorporated into the shari‘ah.

Examples of contexts that had contributed to the understanding of jihad include:

- Pre-Islamic traditions such as the prohibition of war during specific months.

182 Firestone, Jihad, 47-50.
• Traditions which existed before a mass conversion to Islam such as in the case of Mongols, Turks and Berbers.
• Traditions of other communities and civilisation which Muslims interacted with such as the Romans and Persians.
• Contemporary norms such as the international conventions of war and peace.
• Major events such as the Crusaders and Mongol invasion, colonisation of Muslim lands by Western countries and the power struggles among Muslim rulers.
• Fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence) on jihad of the time.¹⁸⁵

The jihad ideas held by the leaders of the Egyptian Al-Jamā‘ah Al-Islāmiyyah is a good example of the evolution of a jihad idea at a particular time by the same persons. Jihad to them was first conceived as political and social reform in the country. After experiencing and witnessing brutal suppression and torture, the idea evolved into overthrowing the authority via violent means. However, the proponents subsequently denounced voluntarily the narrow militant strand and reverted to their original idea when they realised that their violent struggle had failed to achieve the intended outcome and has had detrimental effects on them, the organisation, the religion and the society at large.¹⁸⁶

A study has shown that the current Palestinian groups hold a different concept of jihad from Al-Qaeda. The former are nationalists waging armed jihad while the latter is a global jihadist entity waging jihad across borders and with greater permissiveness. Jihad in Islam can never be properly understood without incorporating diverse views and understanding the contexts behind them. The study of jihad must be dynamic and flexible in approach.¹⁸⁷

The third contributing factor to the diversity in jihad ideas is the actors involved in the formulation of jihad understanding. Michael Bonner lists the categories of actors that had influenced or will always influence jihad ideas:

¹⁸⁷ Cook, Understanding Jihad, 132-3, 149.
• Tribal warriors during the early period of Islam. They contributed to the early classical strand of jihad by incorporating pre-Islamic traditions. Their influence however diminished when Muslim rulers increasingly relied on regular armies.

• Rulers. Muslim rulers have always had a vested interest in jihad. Historically, they waged jihad against non-Muslims as a show of commitment to the religion and to claim legitimacy and endorsement from the population. They used jihad to eliminate rivals and opposition, and in the process, they influenced jihad ideas and rules related to it through royal decrees, fatwā or treatises from the muftī or ‘ulamā’ that supported them.

• Scholars. There were scholars who were purely academics and those who participated in jihad campaigns, but both attempted to guide the understanding of jihad. The latter however also attempted to mobilise Muslims to join jihad campaigns as they did. There were also independent scholars and scholars of a particular establishment. The diversity of scholars who operated in different contexts and had different roles would naturally influence how jihad ideas were formulated. Their relationships with rulers would also determine which ideas became dominant.

• Fighters. They were either regular or volunteers who were fulfilling their religious obligations, pursuing material gains or both. Jihad was often perpetuated due to these interests through the use or misuse of scriptural texts and theological views.188

Esposito concludes that throughout history, jihad ideas were often the product of diverse individuals and authorities applying scriptural texts to myriad contexts.189 In a similar vein, Bonney asserts that history is witness to continual selections of texts and doctrines pertaining to jihad by different actors to suit their different interests.190

The centrality of jihad to Islam and the psyche of Muslims in general mean that various parties would continue to use jihad to pursue interests, whether religiously sanctioned or otherwise.191

189 Esposito, *Unholy War*, 64-5.
191 Ibid. 13, 400.
Bonney notes that throughout Islamic history, jihad had been used not only against infidels but also against fellow Muslims. It had been used not only to defend against aggression but also for the territorial expansion. It had been used by rulers against rival rulers or elites for power, by rulers to quell rebellions by ordinary people and by scholars against internal or external enemies. Participants of jihad were not only militants or fundamentalists but also ṣufi practitioners who were known for their preference for the “greater jihad”.\textsuperscript{192}

The combination of the above three elements has not only resulted in diverse strands of jihad ideas but also different genres of jihad treatises. Peters observes at least three genres: mobilisational, instructional, and a combination of both.

\textit{Different genres}

Treatises in the mobilisational genre muster Muslims for armed jihad in response to a specific, well-defined political situation. This genre, according to Peters, is as old as the history of jihad. An example of this type is Ibn Taymiyah’s work on jihad which sought to mobilise Muslims against the Mongols. The instructional genre emerged with the objective of providing religious guidance and rulings on jihad for Muslims. Generally, it consisted of academic works. Reformist works that seek to reconcile jihad with international law, compare jihad with the just-war theory or to refute the idea that Islam was spread by the sword fall under this genre. The combination genre refers to works that were published to jolt Muslims from their slumber but not necessarily in response to any specific political occurrence. Jihad, as elaborated in this genre, is usually framed as a battle against the threat of an external enemy.\textsuperscript{193}

\textit{Greater jihad first}


The idea that jihad encompasses greater (spiritual) and lesser (armed) jihad and that the former supersedes the latter in importance have existed since the early period of Islam. In fact, the Qur’ān clearly points out that the greater jihad is the first concept of jihad. Muslims during the Meccan period were obligated to focus on their spiritual development and were prohibited from retaliating against persecution and harassment. It was later through classical works that armed fighting became almost synonymous with jihad. Despite this fact, classical scholars still acknowledge that the greater jihad supersedes the lesser jihad in importance.\textsuperscript{194}

\textit{Rethinking past, current and future}

Despite calls for Muslims to speak out against and reign in the militants, the discourse of greater versus lesser jihad is in reality a constant feature of Muslim debate across history. Contemporary scholars, reviewing jihad-related works, find that the dominant strand now is the reformist one.\textsuperscript{195}

However, it will be very difficult for the idea of a totally peaceful jihad to take root among Muslims in the immediate future. David Cook has found that the Islamic tradition does not preclude the mixture of greater and lesser jihad. Even the ṣūfīs hold to both concepts in their understanding of jihad.\textsuperscript{196} The importance of aggressive jihad according to Cook is always latent and can be brought to forth at any time.\textsuperscript{197} In relation to this, Ann Elizabeth Mayer, writing in \textit{War and Peace in the Islamic Tradition and International Law}, asserts that the reformists’ attempt to revise and update jihad understanding to contemporary context has not been recognised. She suggests that there will be no single recognisable consensus on the justification for war and the limit of violence among Muslims. Thus, it will be difficult to derive a definitive Islamic doctrine on jihad.\textsuperscript{198} On

\textsuperscript{197}Ibid, 30-1.
\textsuperscript{198}Mayer, “War and peace,” 197-8.
the same note also, it will be unlikely for Muslims to define jihad similar to the Christian pacifism framework, even though they value peaceful and spiritual jihad above violent ones.

Based on the work of scholars, two important trends may be seen in the future. Cook suggests that the classical and militant viewpoints will have no future as the jihad to avenge perceived wrongs inflicted upon Muslims over the past two centuries "has been a dismal failure, with the possible exception of the expulsion of the Soviet Union from Afghanistan."¹⁹⁹ He views that the era of using jihad as an effective tool for conversion has passed and that its effectiveness in transforming Muslim societies has been doubtful.²⁰⁰ He writes:

"It is difficult to see the situations in the world at the present time where jihad is likely to gain the Muslim community anything. The world is simply too interconnected ... for jihad to separate Muslim from non-Muslims. From the growth of Muslim minorities in non-Muslim countries to the growth of non-Muslim minorities in Muslim countries, as well as the ongoing process of globalization, the evidence suggests that this process will continue to expand in the coming years. Jihad cannot stop it, at least not in its present form, even with the aid of martyrdom operations."²⁰¹

Mayer, however, senses a convergence of ideas among Muslims despite the diversity of ideas. Contemporary Muslim scholars have been keen to update the classical viewpoint. Muslim scholars have abandoned the binary classification of Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb and have accepted the modern nation-state system in international politics. They have also attempted to align jihad with international law and view it in the light of the just-war theory.²⁰²

¹⁹⁹ Cook, Understanding Jihad, 164.
²⁰⁰ Ibid, 165.
²⁰¹ Ibid, 164-5.
²⁰² Mayer, "War and peace," 198.
Efforts made by reformist scholars must be supported. In this regard, Bonney suggests that while the emphasis for greater jihad must continue, the understanding of jihad as a whole must be linked with the dialogue of civilisations on an equal footing, recognising the pluralistic nature of the contemporary world.\textsuperscript{203}

Conclusion and moving the research forward

This chapter has highlighted the diverse views of jihad ideas among Muslims and factors that had and will continue to contribute to it. It has concluded that the diversity will continue and consequently no singular understanding of jihad will ever emerge.

The reformist viewpoint is the dominant strand held by mainstream Muslims, and scholars are making serious and continuous efforts to revisit the classical viewpoint to adapt it to the modern context. Against this backdrop, what are we to make of `Azzám’s contributions to jihadist ideas? The following chapters seek to address this.

\textsuperscript{203}Bonney, \textit{Jihad}, 404, 407, 418.
CHAPTER 4

‘ABD ALLĀH ‘AZZĀM’S JIHAD IDEAS

Introduction

The previous chapter highlighted four major jihad strands found among Muslims today. ‘Abd Allāh ‘Azzām has been identified as an influential figure for the militant strand. This chapter will attempt to examine ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas in greater detail, and will differentiate the militant from the non-militant ideas. ‘Azzām’s militant ideas are influenced by contemporary events and mark a break from the classical strand while the non-militant ideas are similar to those of the traditional and classical strands. This examination will then become the basis of subsequent analysis.

The chapter will examine ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas based on his books, articles and transcripts of lectures. The examination will be divided into the following sections:

- ‘Azzām’s Worldview
- Definition of Jihad
- Status of Jihad in Islam
- Other Ideas Relevant to Jihad
- Types of Jihad
- Stages of Revelation
- Objectives of Jihad
- Who Can Fight for Jihad?
- Ethics and Rules of Jihad
- Martyrs
- Jihad and Īrāb (Terrorism)
- The Idea of Al-Qā’īdah

The chapter will begin by briefly illustrating ‘Azzām’s religious weltanschauung (worldview) – the set of religious ideas and beliefs that framed the way he interpreted and
interacted with the world, and developed his theological opinion. Reconstructing 'Azzām’s broad religious worldview will provide a better appreciation of his jihad ideas.

Where 'Azzām’s jihad ideas run similar to the classical view, illustrated in the previous chapters, only brief illustration will be given followed by references to the relevant section of the previous chapter to avoid repetition and to economise space.

'Azzām’s Worldview

As highlighted previously, 'Azzām admitted he was greatly influenced by Ibn Taymiyah and Sayyid Qūtb.1 He was also affiliated with the Muslim Brothers, founded by Ḥasan Al-Bannā.2 His contact with the Muslim Brothers began when in his early teenage years, according to some of his biographies.3

A review of materials associated with ‘Azzām has revealed that his ideology bears striking similarity to those of Ibn Taymiyah, Qūtb and Al-Bannā’s Muslim Brothers.4 His ideas also conform to the broad worldview held by jihadist groups, as illustrated in Chapter 1.5

‘Azzām’s worldview is summarised as follows:

1. Islam is supreme over other religions. It is the only true religion recognised by God.6

---

4 See Chapter 3, sub-section on Ibn Taymiyah, Sayyid Qūtb and Ḥasan Al-Bannā.
5 See Chapter 1, section on The Threat of Jihadist Terrorism.
2. Allâh is the absolute sovereign; with the absolute power to legislate over ḫalâl (permissible) and ḥârâm (prohibited).\(^7\) Man has been entrusted only as His caliph (vicegerent) to uphold His commands i.e. the shâri'ah.\(^8\)

3. Islam is the only comprehensive way of life for all human beings; it recognises no separation between religion and politics.\(^9\)

4. All virtues such as justice, freedom and happiness can only be attained through the teachings of Islam.\(^10\)

5. Muslims are obligated to uphold and practice Islam (shâri'ah) in its totality. The failure to fulfill this is sinful, while its rejection is an act of kufr (disbelief).\(^11\)

6. The crux of Islam is tawhîd (monotheism) and living fully by the shâri'ah is a practical manifestation of tawhîd. They cannot be separated from each other and Muslims must accomplish both to gain salvation in the Afterlife.\(^12\)

7. The best way to understand tawhîd and practice the shâri'ah is to adopt the salafiy way.\(^13\)

8. The establishment of an Islamic caliphate or Islamic state is fundamental to upholding Islam fully. After the collapse of the Ottoman caliphate, it became obligatory for all Muslims to re-establish the caliphate in any part of world.
9. Muslims are obliged to ensure that Islam eventually rules the world through the institution of the caliphate and that all infidels submit to Islamic rule.¹⁴

10. Life is a constant battle between the truth (Islam) and falsehood/jahifiyah (other beliefs). There is no common ground.¹⁵ There will always be some proponent of falsehood/jahifiyah to stand in the way of Islam.¹⁶

11. Armed jihad for the supremacy of Islam is not only inevitable but also a constant feature of this life.¹⁷

12. Muslims are enjoined to be wary, strict, stern and firm towards all infidels.¹⁸

13. Muslims must uphold the principle of al-walā’ (total loyalty and allegiance to God and doing what pleases Him i.e. loyalty to fellow Muslims) and al-barā’ (total disassociation from anything that displeases God). The latter includes things that are related to kufr (disbelief) and kuffār (infidels). As such, Muslims should avoid living related to kufr (disbelief) and their actions will consequently be rejected.


¹⁵Azzām held a similar concept of jāhiyāyah as Ibn Taymiyah, Al-Mawdu’diy and Qutb as well as a similar stand. See Chapter 3, sub-section on Ibn Taymiyah, Al-Mawdu’diy, Sayyid Ḥuṭb and Ḥasan Al-Bannā.


¹⁸Ibid; Ibid.
with them or following their lifestyles. They are also forbidden from appointing any infidels as their rulers.\textsuperscript{19}

14. It is essential to form a core group of Muslims, Al-Qā‘idah Al-Ṣulbah that is committed to continuous education and training in religious knowledge and practices, including participation in armed jihad.\textsuperscript{20}

In addition to the above, Ibn Taymiyah’s influence in ’Azzām’s thinking can also be seen in three areas: his commitment to the salafiy way of understanding tawhid and practicing the shari‘ah, his conception of tawhid, which is identical to Ibn Taymiyah’s exposition of tawḥīd rubūbiyyah, ulūhiyyah and al-asmā’ wa al-ṣifāt\textsuperscript{21}, and his hostility towards sufism.\textsuperscript{22}

’Azzām’s participation in the jihad in Afghanistan was not just a defensive jihad against foreign invasion into a Muslim territory, it was also a jihad for his worldview.

Definition of Jihad

According to ’Azzām, jihad, in the Qur‘ān and hadith, refer to fighting the infidels – a position upheld by all four major mazhabs (schools of jurisprudence), namely the Hanafī, Malikī, Shāfī‘ī and Hanbālī schools.\textsuperscript{23} He drew a parallel to the term ṣalāh

\begin{flushleft}
\textsuperscript{21}Tawḥīd rubūbiyyah (monotheism in the divinity of Allah) is to believe that Allah is the only God, the creator, the planner, the sustainer etc. of the universe. Tawḥīd ulūhiyyah (monotheism in the worship of Allah) is to believe that none has the right to be worshipped, submitted to and obeyed but Allah. Tawḥīd al-asmā’ wa al-ṣifāt (monotheism in the qualities of Allah) is to believe in all names and attributes that Allah has named and attributed to himself in the Qur‘ān or through the Prophet. For reference, see note 22 below.
\textsuperscript{22}Ibid.; ’Azzām, Al-As ‘ilah Wa Al-Ajwibah, 17; ’Azzām, Fi Zīqāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 87; ’Azzām, Sīsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyyah Vol. 3, 177-8, 325-6; See ‘Azzām, Al-‘Aqidah Wa Atharuhu Fi Bina’ Al-Jayl. 133
(prayer) which in Islam is restricted to a specific form of prayer only – as referred to in the Qur’ān and hadith. Otherwise, Muslims could offer any form of prayer. This would undermine the obligation of the five daily prayers as one of the five pillars of Islam.24

Hence, 'Azzām felt that broadening the meaning of jihad, based on its etymological meaning “to struggle”, would undermine the Qur’ānic injunction to fight infidels. 'Azzām believed this to be an obligation that is central to Islam and which must stand till the end of the world.25

He interpreted the meaning of jihad and the word fi sabil Allāh (in the path of Allāh) as used in the Qur’ān and the hadiths, to mean fighting against the infidels – a view that is shared by classical Muslim scholars.26

Status of Jihad in Islam

The pinnacle of Islam

Quoting a hadith that says “the pinnacle of Islam is jihad”, 'Azzām saw jihad as the pinnacle of Islamic devotion.27 He considered it the best deed after the belief in Allāh, a point asserted also by Ibn Taymiyyah.28 'Azzām even regarded jihad as being more important than obligatory prayer, fasting in Ramaḍān, ḥaj (pilgrimage) and all other farḍ 'ayn obligations.29 This is because jihad is concerned with the interest of Muslims at...
large and protecting Islam from external threats, whereas the other farḍ 'ayn obligations only concern the individual. Azzām even cited Ibn Taymiyah’s fatwā which said that Muslims are obligated to contribute their wealth or pay their obligatory zakāh (tithe) towards jihad even if it means forgoing zakāh towards the destitutes.

Accordingly, the status of a mujāhid (jihad fighter) has been exalted to such an extent that even a sinful mujāhid is believed to be superior to a pious Muslim who is not a mujāhid.

Jihad guarantees glory for Islam

Azzām’s reading of history convinced him that the high commitment placed on jihad by the early Muslims (salaf) had brought glory to Islam.

Azzām observed that the fate of the early Muslims changed tremendously only after God made jihad obligatory. He pointed out that within a few years after the Prophet’s migration and the commandment to wage jihad, the number of Arabs converting to Islam grew exponentially from a few hundred to about 100,000.

He also highlighted that it was jihad that had brought down the two superpowers of the time – the Roman and Persian empires – under the leadership of the caliphs. This not only increased the territory of Dār Al-Islām but also brought wealth to Muslims and increased the Muslim population – an effect that in the later years turned Islam into a political and civilisational hegemony, which commanded respect and struck fear in the hearts of infidels.
According to 'Azzām, the glory of Islam was achieved because the early Muslims held jihad as a way of life. Like any great civilisation, the glorious history of Islam was written in blood, and therefore its glory may only be reclaimed through the same way.\(^{35}\)

'Azzām was convinced that Islam and Muslims will not attain glory, respect, territory and more believers without jihad.\(^{36}\) He believed that the humiliating state of the Muslims now was due to their abandonment of their jihad duty – a view that was similarly held by Al-Faraj.\(^{37}\)

**Jihad guarantees the survival of Islam**

As described in the previous section, 'Azzām believed in “the cosmic battle” between Muslims, on the side of truth, and non-Muslims on the side of falsehood/jahifiyah.\(^{38}\) Jihad is necessary for Islam to attain its mission as well as for its survival and security.\(^{39}\) Without jihad, Islam and Muslims are exposed to the serious threat of jahifiyah forces and will be overwhelmed politically, economically, militarily and culturally – which is a


reality for Muslims today. Most Muslims share this sense of being overwhelmed, but they disagree with the radicals that armed jihad is the solution.

'Azzām's belief in jihad as the means of establishing God's law and countering the evil intentions of jāhīfiyyah forces was reinforced by the following verses of the Qurʾān:

“Permission [to fight] is given to those against whom war is being wrongfully waged and, verily, God has indeed the power to succour them. Those who have been driven from their homelands against all right for no other reason than their saying. “Our Sustainer is God!” For, if God had not enabled people to defend themselves against one another, all] monasteries and churches and synagogues and mosques - in [all of] which Gods name is abundantly extolled - would surely have been destroyed [ere now]....”

Jihad guarantees survival of humanity

Because 'Azzām considered Islam as the only religion for humanity, and that jihad is the means of establishing Islam, he believed that humanity and its survival can only be achieved and guaranteed through jihad. Otherwise, jāhīfiyyah would prevail and humanity will continue to suffer the ills of modern Western society.

Jihad produces true Muslims

'Azzām believed that Islam's glory and survival would be delivered in the hands of a core group he called Al-Qāʾidah Al-Šūbah, comprised of men who had undergone the hardship, difficulty and sacrifices of jihad. He felt that many Islamic teachings such as

patience, tawakkul (reliance to Allah) and belief in qadr (predestination) can never be understood and internalised fully until a person is put under a real test, the ultimate form of which is in the battlefield of jihad.

A corollary to this is the view that true Islamic society can only be achieved when the society has succeeded the test of jihad. 45

**Jihad is the gauge**

The centrality of jihad in Islam means, in Azzam's opinion, that the level of one's commitment to and participation in jihad is a barometer of one's belief in Allah, as well as one's sincerity and commitment towards Islam. 46

Thus, laggardness and indifference towards jihad are considered signs of hypocrisy and a weakness in faith. Therefore, those who have no aspiration to perform jihad are to be abhorred. 47

In Azzam's view, the best opportunity to achieve all the merits of jihad was through participation in the Afghan jihad. He admitted that although there were jihad campaigns in other parts of the world, none offered greater potential for success.

**Other Ideas Relevant to Jihad**

The importance of intention


In accordance with the classical view, ‘Azzām held that fighting infidels would only be accepted as jihad, if it was done for Allāh and for the purpose of establishing His religion. ⁴⁸

The division of lands
In ‘Azzām’s view, lands can be divided into four categories: Dār Al-Islām, Dār Al-Ḥarb, Dār Al-‘Ahd and Others.

His definition of Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb is identical to that in the classical strand.⁴⁹ ‘Azzām borrowed the concept of Dār Al-‘Ahd from Al-Shāfi‘ī, the founder of the Shāfi‘ī school of jurisprudence. It refers to any territory outside of Dār Al-Islām that has a formal peace agreement with Muslims. This includes contemporary diplomatic agreements between states. Thus, all states that have diplomatic relations with Dār Al-Islām are considered Dār Al-‘Ahd.⁵⁰ ‘Azzām emphasised the importance of respecting any agreement signed by Muslims, as he considered this a definite injunction recorded in many verses of the Qur’ān. ‘Azzām warned “If we [Muslims] do not fulfill [promises and agreements], who else would?”⁵¹ Although ‘Azzām did not explicitly refer to the UN Charter, by which all member countries including Muslim states today have a peace agreement, it can be inferred that he could have considered UN member states to be outside of Dār Al-Ḥarb, and therefore not targets of jihad.

The last category, Others, refers to a land that was part of Dār Al-Islām where the shari‘ah had been replaced by secular laws, either by Muslims living there or by a non-Muslim regime occupying it. This category is derived from Ibn Taymiyah’s fatwā on the status of 13th-century Mardin city, which had submitted to the Mongol ruler and was ruled by the Mongol traditional law, although it was populated by Muslims and defended

⁴⁹ Ibid, 1-5.
⁵⁰ Ibid, 5-6.
⁵¹ ‘Azzām, Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 16-7, 22; ‘Azzām, Ittiḥāḍ Al-‘Ībād, 24.
by Muslim soldiers. Ibn Taymiyah considered Mardin city as being neither Dār Al-Islām nor Dār Al-Ḥarb. 'Azzām used this category for Afghanistan, which was ruled by the local communist party supported by the Soviet Union. This category includes other contemporary Muslim countries which are governed by laws modeled on Western countries. 52

Four stages of Islamic struggle
From the history of the Prophet, 'Azzām had identified four stages in the evolution of Islamic struggle. The first stage was the Prophet's public pronouncement of his prophethood, and his invitation to people to embrace Islam and renounce paganism.

The second stage was the stage of persecution and the war of ideas with the jāhilīyah establishment that was opposed to Islam.

The third was the stage of war when Muslims were permitted to take up arms in the name of jihad against jāhilīyah. This stage was a protracted one, with a good number unable to persevere. Those who stayed on would later form the core of the ummah; becoming the leaders who led the struggle to the victory in the fourth and final stage. This was the stage in which the Prophet made a victorious entrance into Mecca and subsequently saw the fall of the Roman and Persian empires in the hands of the succeeding caliphs.

'Azzām postulated that efforts to revive the Muslim ummah to its former glory would have to go through the same stages. 53 In his worldview, jihad against the infidels is an inevitable consequence of any true struggle for Islam and that jihad in Afghanistan was the critical third stage that would catalyse the return of the glory of Islam.

Four steps of jihad

52 'Azzām, Tāfār Al-Jihād, 6-7.
Azzam defined the four steps necessary for any Muslim interested in performing jihad as hijrah (migration), i’dād (preparation), ribāt (standing-by) and finally participation in jihad.  

Hijrah refers to migration from any lands where Muslims are unable to practice Islam fully either due to the rampant proliferation of vices and immorality, or the fear of persecution, to Dār Al-Islām. This is held as obligatory unless these Muslims believe that they are able to fulfill the greater interests of Islam by remaining there.  

Hijrah is also obligatory on Muslims whose expertise is needed in Dār Al-Islām. In addition, hijrah to the land of jihad is considered a farq ’ayn when jihad in that land is also farq ’ayn. This link between hijrah and jihad made Azzām believe that hijrah was intricately connected to jihad, and was in fact the initial step towards it. His belief stemmed from many verses in the Qur’ān. Furthermore, this was consistent with the fact that the Prophet migrated to Medina first before God commanded him to wage jihad.  

Since jihad is a standing obligation until the end of the world, Azzām reasoned that the command for hijrah takes on a similar rule, and those who die in the course of migration are considered martyrs. This is because hijrah requires sacrifices, and the willingness to perform hijrah is a sign of great commitment to Islam and strong faith.  

Azzām endorsed migration to Dār Al-Islām even if Muslims do not fear for their religion or security as he considered that living with infidels is not acceptable in Islam.

55 Azzām, F’lan Al-Jihād, 8; Azzām, Muqaddimah, 16-8, 25-7; Azzām, “Taḥtīm Al-Quyūd,” 7-8.
56 Ibid; Azzām, Ittihāf Al-’Ibād, 5-6; Azzām, Al-As’ālah Wa Al-Aywābah, 26; Azzām, Jihād Sha’b Muslim, 10.
58 Ibid; Ibid; Azzām, ’Ibar Wa Bāṣūr, 6; Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbīyah Vol. 12, 55.
59 Azzām, Muqaddimah, 19.
60 Ibid, 14; Azzām, Fī Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 11; Azzām, Ittihāf Al-’Ibād, 5.
The second step, i’dād, refers to the preparations Muslims must undertake for jihad after hijrah. This preparation consists of physical and military training as well as intellectual and spiritual development. The intellectual component covers the right worldview (fikrah), theology (‘aqīdah) and jurisprudence (fiqh) to ensure all actions of the individual are in accordance to the precepts of Islam. Spiritual training refers to beautifying oneself with patience, tawakkul, humility and compassion so as to ensure that the individual’s relationship with others (man and other creations) closely mirrors the example of the Prophet. Without the intellectual and spiritual components, ‘Azzām feared that the people who train for jihad could easily go astray and form a band of bandits instead.

The importance of i’dād, in ‘Azzām’s view, is recorded in the verses where Allāh reprimanded those who had asked to be excused from participation in jihad due to their lack of preparation. This implies that true commitment to jihad must be manifested through one’s preparation at all times. I’dād is not only a practical step for the fulfillment of one’s jihad obligation but also the sign of a Muslim’s sincerity, faith and commitment to the religion.

After proper training, Muslims are enjoined to take up the third step—ribāṭ. This refers to life in the frontier posts, to carry out military operations against the enemy or to safeguard the border from enemy attacks. Although ribāṭ requires less exertion of resources, ‘Azzām pointed out that those who die in ribāṭ would also receive the status of martyrdom. Muslims are thus enjoined to establish frontier posts for security reasons and to facilitate ribāṭ practices.

---

In essence, 'Azzām was calling for Muslims all over the world to join the jihad in Afghanistan where they could carry out all the four steps – migration, then joining the training camps before being deployed to the various fronts and lastly participating in jihad operations against the enemy.

Types of Jihad

'Azzām classified jihad into two types:

- Jihād Al-Daf (defensive jihad). This is when Muslims are under attack. It is farḍ 'āyn upon the affected Muslims to engage in jihad. If they are not able to repel the enemy, the obligation first extends to other Muslims living within about a 90-kilometer radius and then, if more fighters are needed this radius is extended until sufficiency is achieved or until it covers all Muslims.

- Jihād Al-Ṭalab (offensive jihad). This refers to jihad campaigns against all Dār Al-Ḥarb or non-Muslims not under the rule of Dār Al-Islām. This must be done at least once a year by a Muslim ruler.65

Jihād Al-Ṭalab, in 'Azzām’s view was largely theoretical as his priority is in the defensive jihad (Jihād Al-Daf) of Afghanistan. Furthermore, since 'Azzām’s definition of occupied Muslim lands that need to be reclaimed encompassed all lands formerly under the rule of an Islamic caliphate, defensive jihad would be the type of jihad for many decades to come.

Ruling of Jihad

'Azzām’s understanding of the ruling of jihad is to a large extent similar to the dominant classical viewpoint.

---

65 Azzām, 'Defence Of Muslims' Land (Chapter1); Azzām, Dhikrayāt Filisṭīn, 18-20; Azzām, “Jihād, Lā Irhāb,” 4-7; Azzām, I'lam Al-Jihād, 1; Azzām, Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 3; Azzām, Silsila Fī Al-Tarbiyāh, Vol. 2, 60; Azzām, Jihād 'Sha'b Muslim, 5.
He agreed that jihad is originally farḍ kifayah. In this situation, a Muslim ruler is obligated to wage a jihad campaign at least once a year.\textsuperscript{66}

But, 'Azzām strongly viewed that jihad today is farḍ 'ayn.\textsuperscript{67} He believed that this is so not just since the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan, but since the fall of Andalusia to the hands of Christians in 1492. He believed jihad will remain farḍ 'ayn until all lands that used to belong to Dār Al-Islām, such as Central Asia, Mindanao, Kashmir and Chad, are brought back under the Islamic rule.\textsuperscript{68}

Although 'Azzām’s original fatwā on jihad as farḍ 'ayn was in response to the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan, the ruling was not contingent or restricted to the events in Afghanistan, as he had clearly stated in many of his published materials. In fact, this is one of 'Azzām’s most consistent standpoints on jihad. 'Azzām offered three main arguments.

Firstly, he held that there is already a consensus among Muslim scholars that jihad is farḍ 'ayn when an inch of Dār Al-Islām is occupied by infidels until it is reclaimed back. This is applicable to Afghanistan and indeed to many other lands.\textsuperscript{69}

Secondly, he argued that daf al-ṣāīl was an obligation upon all Muslims. Daf al-ṣāīl refers to the act of resisting any transgression on personal life, honour and property. If someone seeks to threaten the life of another person, molest/rape a woman or rob a property, a Muslim is obligated to defend them and if the Muslim dies, in the process, he

\textsuperscript{66} 'Azzām, Defence Of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 4); 'Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 3); 'Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 3, 13, 49, 51, 57; 'Azzām, Fī Zīlāt Surah Al-Tawbah, 77; 'Azzām, I’lān Al-Jihād, 2; 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām, The Signs of Ar-Rahman in the Jihad of Afghanistan, (Birmingham: Maktabah, date not cited), 59.

\textsuperscript{67} Ibid; 'Azzām, Al-As’īlah Wa Al-Ajwabah, 7, 20.


\textsuperscript{69} Ibid; Ibid; ‘Azzam, Defence of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 1).
or she is considered a martyr. 'Azzam reasoned that the obligation to defend life, honour and property could be extrapolated to defending a whole nation like Afghanistan. In fact, he sees this latter act to be even more important. 70

Thirdly, even if jihad is considered farād kifayah in the context of Afghanistan, jihad is only relieved from the shoulders of all Muslims when it can be fulfilled sufficiently by other Muslims. But 'Azzām argued that this was not yet the case, pointing to the situation in Afghanistan as well as the fact that there are many Muslim lands that are still under infidel occupation. Thus, jihad is farād 'ayn on all Muslims until it can be satisfactorily carried out by a group of Muslims. 71

'Azzām’s view that individual participation of farād 'ayn jihad does not necessitate seeking permission from one’s parents, the authorities or creditors, is identical to the classical viewpoint. 72 His stance is that permission is only required when jihad is farād kifayah. 73

In addition, 'Azzām also ruled that:

- The interest of jihad has priority above any personal interests because it is for the greater good of the religion or the nation. Hence citing another religious duty as an excuse for not participating in jihad is unacceptable. 74
- Muslims should donate towards jihad rather than accumulate wealth for personal gain. It is considered permissible for the authority to seize the wealth of the rich and use it for jihad. 75

71 'Azzām, Defence of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 4); 'Azzām, Dhikrayat Filisṭīn, 18-20; 'Azzām, I’lān Al-Jihād, 1; 'Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 3, 18-9, 21-3, 50; 'Azzām, Sīilsilah Fī Al-Tāriyāh Vol. 2, 60; 'Azzām, Jihād Sha’b Muslim, 5.
73 'Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 2, 7, 14-6, 22-3; 'Azzām, Defence Of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 3 and 4).
74 Ibid, 8, 15, 80; 'Azzām, Fī Al-Ta’āumur Al-’Ālamīyy, 38; 'Azzām, Fī Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 79.
• It is permissible to use all zakāh funds for jihad fi sabīl Allāh, even if it means leaving nothing for the other seven groups of lawful recipients (namely, the needy [miskīn], the poor [faqīr], zakāh collector [ʿāmil], new convert or potential Muslim [muallaf], slave [raqabah], wayfarer [ibn sabīl] and debtor [ghārim]).

• It is allowed to spend all wealth for jihad purposes even if it means not giving anything to destitutes.

• Financial contribution to jihad does not relieve a Muslim from physical participation.

• The verse, “Nor should the Believers all go forth together: if a contingent from every expedition remained behind, they could devote themselves to studies in religion, and admonish the people when they return to them....” which implies that participation in jihad is not obligatory upon every Muslim, applies only when jihad is farḍ kifāyah.

• The obligation stands despite the numerical advantage of the enemy. The verse that permits Muslims to retreat or suspend jihad due to the enemy’s numerical advantage is only applicable when jihad is farḍ kifāyah. When jihad is farḍ ʿayn, Muslims must uphold jihad even if he is alone.

ʾAzzām held that it is obligatory to incite Muslims for jihad, be it farḍ ʿayn or kifāyah, because the means towards an obligation is itself obligatory. Those who discourage Muslims from jihad have committed a grave sin similar to those who prevent them from

---

76 Azzām, Fī Al-Tawbah, 110-1.
77 Ibid, 112.
78 Azzām, ʿIlājāt Muslim (Part 3); Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijfihād, 3.
79 The Qurʾān, 9:122.
80 ‘Azzām, Fī Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 110-1.
81 ibid, 4, 65-6; ‘Azzām, ʿIlājāt Muslim (Chapter 3); ‘Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 2, 60.
83 ‘Azzām, ʿIlājāt Muslim (Chapter 3); ‘Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 2; ‘Azzām, Muqaddimah, 64.
84 The Qurʾān, 8:65-6.
performing obligatory prayers.\textsuperscript{84} ‘Azzām considered Muslims today as sinners for allowing many Muslim lands to remain occupied. The non-participating ‘ulamā’ bear a greater sin for they are supposed to be role models for Muslims.

Although jihad is an obligation for all Muslims, ‘Azzām ruled that it must be performed collectively because the purpose of jihad cannot be achieved by fighting individually.\textsuperscript{85} This means that Muslims must fight under a rightful authority, and this traditionally refers to a ruler of Dār Al-Islām. In the absence of such an authority, ‘Azzām suggested that Muslims should organise themselves by forming a jama‘ah (group) and appointing a leader, or join an existing jihad group. He asserted that the threat posed by the enemy on Muslim lands and the religion dictates that jihad must be carried out despite the absence or the dereliction of authority. It is the duty of the ‘ulamā’, according to ‘Azzām, to incite and lead Muslims in performing this obligation.\textsuperscript{86} In any case, ‘Azzām believed that jihad is an obligation that Muslims should strive to perform regardless of whether it was ruled as farq ‘ayn or kifāyah.\textsuperscript{87}

In ‘Azzam’s worldview, jihad will continue to be farq ‘ayn until an Islamic state exists and all lands formerly belong to the Islamic caliphate are returned to Islamic rule.

\textbf{Stages of Revelation}

‘Azzām held the same classical view on the four stages of Qur’ānic revelation on jihad.\textsuperscript{88} However, he favoured the view that the final stage, i.e. the revelation of jihad verses in chapter 9 of the Qur’ān, abrogated all earlier jihad verses.\textsuperscript{89}

This leaves the infidels with only these options:

\textsuperscript{84}‘Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 42; ‘Azzām, Fī Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 125; ‘Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 3); ‘Azzam, Bashā‘ir Al-Navr, 5, 13.

\textsuperscript{85}‘Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 3); ‘Azzām, ‘Ilām Al-Jihād, 2.


\textsuperscript{87}‘Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbīyah Vol. 3, 86-7; ‘Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbīyah Vol. 12, 9.

\textsuperscript{88}See Chapter 3, sub-section on Stages of Jihad.

• embrace Islam; or
• remain a non-Muslim but submit to Islamic rule and pay jizyah; or
• become targets of Muslims aggression.\textsuperscript{90}

The final revelation on jihad, according to 'Azzām, prescribes the basis of Muslim-infidel relations as war, not peace.\textsuperscript{91}

Objectives of Jihad

Jihad is to be undertaken for the following objectives:
• To revive Muslims from their current slumber to their previous glory.
• To establish Islam above all other religions and ideologies.
• To establish Dār Al-Islām as the political and geographical base for Islam.
• To counter-balance and deter jāhiliyyah forces.
• To help the oppressed and eliminate tyranny.
• To attain a high position in heaven and salvation from hell.\textsuperscript{92}

It can be deduced that 'Azzām saw this as a jihad of self-defense aimed at bringing all of Dār Al-Ḥarb or all infidels under the rule of Islam. However, he asserted that proper da'wah (propagation) must precede any offensive jihad campaigns against Dār Al-Ḥarb or infidels. More elaboration of 'Azzām's view on this aspect will be touched in the coming section. The immediate objective, however, was the defeat of communist forces and the establishment of Islamic state in Afghanistan.

Who Can Fight for Jihad?

\textsuperscript{90}Ibid, 36.
\textsuperscript{91} 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah}, 1, 5, 184.
‘Azzām believed that all Muslims who have met the criteria as listed in the discussion on the classical strand⁹³ are to perform the duty of jihad, either voluntarily or by conscription.⁹⁴

In addition to those who are exempt from jihad according to classical scholars, ’Azzām held that, in view of the context, the exemption could be extended to persons who are denied by governments from travelling. This may be in the form of the refusal to issue travel documents⁹⁵ or the denial of entry visas into jihad lands.⁹⁶

However, even those who are exempted from jihad should still participate if they are able to. In any case, they are obligated to contribute financially and constantly supplicate for the success of jihad.⁹⁷

According to ’Azzām, fulfillment of other religious duties and obligations in a society is not a valid reason for not participating in jihad. The same rule applies to those who have debt. ’Azzām argued that many companions of the Prophet were indebted when they participated in jihad. Muslims who are tied down with employment should resign from their work and students should abandon their study.⁹⁸

’Azzām believed two types of people should be prohibited from participating in jihad; murjif (those who like to disseminate negative information to demoralise the fighters) and mukhzil (those who seek to discourage people from participating in jihad).⁹⁹

**Ethics and Rules of Jihad**

---

⁹³See Chapter 3, sub section on Fighters.
⁹⁴”Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 3); ’Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbiyah, 88.
⁹⁵Ibid, 5, 13; ’Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 12, 13-4; ’Azzām, Muqaddimah, 78; ’Azzām, Fī Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 141.
⁹⁶Ibid, 4.
⁹⁸”Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijithād, 59; ’Azzām, Fī Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 140, 169, 183; ’Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 2); ’Azzām, Jihad Sha'b Muslim, 9; ’Azzām, Fī Al-Ta'amur Al-Ālamiy, 38.
⁹⁹”Azzām, Jihad Sha'b Muslim, 5; ’Azzām, Fī Al-Jihād: Adāb Wa Aḥkām, 39; ’Azzām, Fī Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 6, 83, 86, 162.
In addition to the right intention, i.e. for the sake of God, 'Azzām believed that fighting can only be accepted as jihad if it conforms to the established ethics and rules of war in Islam.

Otherwise, there is the risk that the fighting will not be considered as a commendable and honorable act that is aimed at pleasing God.\textsuperscript{100}

\textit{Da'wah, warning and declaration}

'Azzām was inclined to the view upheld by the majority of classical scholars that jihad cannot be waged against infidels before ensuring that the message of Islam has been conveyed to them.\textsuperscript{101} After that, the infidels should be given an ultimatum and sufficient time to make their decision.

The above process is particularly relevant for countries, individuals or communities of infidels that have not had any prior peace agreements with Muslims.\textsuperscript{102}

\textit{Legitimate targets}

The legitimate targets of jihad according to 'Azzām are:

- Infidel fighters
- Quṭṭā' Al-Ṭurūq/Muḥāribūn (Bandits/Miscreants)
- Bughāh (Rebels)\textsuperscript{103}

'Azzām held a view similar to all Muslim scholars that only infidel fighters can be targeted or fought in the jihad battlefield.\textsuperscript{104} However, jihad must conform to the rules of engagement.

\textsuperscript{100}ibid, 1, 8, 11.
\textsuperscript{101}See Chapter 3, sub-section on Rules Before Battle; 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Al-Jihād: Ādāb Wa Ḥakām}, 5-8.
\textsuperscript{102}Azzām, \textit{I’lām Al-Jihād}, 1.
\textsuperscript{103}ibid, 12; 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Al-Jihād: Ādāb Wa Ḥakām}, 5, 26-7.
\textsuperscript{104}See Chapter 3, sub-section on Rules During Battle; 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Al-Jihād: Ādāb Wa Ḥakām}, 5.
While classical scholars disagree on whether fighting quṭṭāʾ al-ṭuruq and bughāh were considered jihad, they acknowledged that it is legitimate in Islam. 'Azzām’s stand on this was, however, not clear. It is probable that he regarded it as jihad because firstly, both were covered in one of his main treatises on jihad titled Fi Al-Jihād: Adāb Wa Aḥkām (Jihad: Ethics and Rules) and, secondly, he reiterated that those who were killed in fighting against these two groups are considered martyrs by a majority of classical scholars. However, 'Azzam emphasised that da'wah and warning must precede jihad against both quṭṭāʾ al-ṭuruq and bughāh.

Quṭṭāʾ al-ṭuruq was a term used by 'Azzām to describe the people who attacked and stole from the mujāhidin’s supply convoy or fought the mujāhidin because they refused to pay protection levies to them.

Non-legitimate targets

Similar to the classical viewpoint, 'Azzām ruled that it was not permissible to target non-fighters such as women, children, unarmed ordinary folk, old men and monks. He, however, upheld the majority view that all non-fighters would lose this immunity if they contributed to the war either through money, ideas or spreading propaganda aimed at raising the morale of their soldiers and/or demoralising the Muslim army.

Thus, 'Azzām ruled that it is permissible to kill Jews in America or American Jews if they were found to be contributing to Israel. He cautioned that one must be guided by consideration of benefits (mašālih) versus the harms (darar) which may be caused, as well as the fatwā of Aḥl Al-Thughūr, scholars who have participated in armed jihad. To 'Azzām, Aḥl Al-Thughūr are the people qualified to provide appropriate and accurate advice in this matter.

On monks and clergymen, 'Azzām said those who live and mix with the society can be targeted but those who live in monasteries seclusively cannot. The former is assumed to have contributed to war, just like members of any religious institution within the society. A similar rule is also applied to the nobles and elites.¹⁰⁸

However, this immunity did not apply to Afghan communists, regardless of gender. He reasoned that their ideology was inherently hostile and detrimental to Islam and that they were apostates punishable by death. He also highlighted that women today played an active role in promoting ideologies and that their beliefs could affect their immunity status.¹⁰⁹

Targeting dhimmīys and those who have made peace agreements with Muslims is strictly forbidden. The same applies to those who have surrendered.¹¹⁰

The rule on targeting property is also similar to the classical viewpoint,¹¹¹ which advocates minimal destruction to end hostility by incapacitating the enemy's fighting ability but not a total destruction of infrastructure. The power to decide lies with the rightful authority, i.e. the ruler and/or military commander. One example of impermissible destruction of property is an act that would bring about famine.¹¹²

'Azzām held a firm view on the impermissibility of killing Muslims indiscriminately.¹¹³ He wrote Jarīmat Qatl Al-Nafs Al-Muslimah (The Crime of Killing Muslim Life) as a response to conflicts among jihad groups in Afghanistan that had, on many occasions, taken the lives of Muslims. It is believed that each Muslim life is as sacred as the holy land of Mecca. 'Azzām ruled that killing fellow Muslims is a grave sin that may qualify a

¹⁰⁸ 'Azzām, Tā‘ārīf Al-Jihād, 13-4.
¹⁰⁹ 'Azzām, Fi Al-Jihād: Adāb Wa Ahkām, 45-53; 'Azzām, Jarīmat Qatl, 2-6, 10-1; 'Azzām, Al-Saraţān Al-Ahmār, 23-6.
¹¹⁰ Ibid, 5.
¹¹¹ See Chapter 3, sub-section on Rules During Battle.
¹¹³ 'Azzām, Ittiḥād Al-Ibād, 9, 12, 14, 117.
person a permanent place in hell. Those who collaborated with or sheltered someone who had killed a Muslim risked receiving the same punishment as that of the killer.¹¹⁴

However, 'Azzām reiterated that the above rulings did not apply to Muslims who were fighting on the side of the Afghan communist regime or working for any intelligence agency belonging to the infidels, as they were considered apostates and must be fought and killed.¹¹⁵

**Peace agreement and cease fire**

'Azzām ruled that any peace agreements which contradicted the shari‘ah is null and void. This is especially if the agreement caused the suspension of jihad indefinitely. When jihad is deemed as farḍ 'ayn, he made the ruling that no peace agreements should be ratified until all occupied lands are reclaimed. This is to avoid any neglect of jihad duties due to the peace agreements and the de facto surrender of Muslim lands to infidels. Hence, 'Azzām asserted that ratifying peace agreements with the Afghan communist regime was not an option and that the regime had to surrender the government to the mujahidin leaders.¹¹⁶

However, if an agreement was signed, 'Azzām warned that Muslims should commit to all the terms of agreement. The ḥafṣīth that says “war is deception”, according to him, only applies to those who has no peace agreements with Muslims and that the use of peace agreements as a part of a ruse for deception is an act of betrayal forbidden in Islam.¹¹⁷

Nonetheless, 'Azzām reminded Muslims to be wary of infidels whom he considered inherently deceitful.¹¹⁸

---


¹¹⁸ Ibid, 22.
Tactics and means

Although the use of modern weaponry such as rifles, artillery and rockets were potentially problematic from the dominant classical viewpoint because they can cause collateral damage, 'Azzām ruled their permissibility on the basis of the inevitability of their use and as long as they are not used against non-legitimate targets. He forbade the use of fire for killing and burning unless there is real necessity.

'Azzām held the view that suicide is forbidden in battle, but he endorsed the use of daring tactics that could risk the lives of Muslim fighters similar to the contemporary use of commando raids. While he acknowledged that classical scholars were divided on the issue, he preferred the view that permitted it. Citing those views, he asserted that suicide is carried out due to despair, while these tactics were conducted for the noble cause of exalting the word of God, to protect fellow fighters, to prevent greater harm (such as occupation) and to fight and strike fear in the enemy. Furthermore, the practice has had many precedents among the early Muslims and had been endorsed by the companions of the Prophet. It is considered permissible so long as it can achieve either of two purposes: bringing benefit to Muslims by raising their morale and motivating them to fight, or to destroy the enemy.

On the same basis also, he endorsed human-driven bombs; be it in the form of explosive-laden vehicles or vests. 'Azzām did not recognise the difference between the classical practice of daring acts during battle and the human bomb. Although in reality, the former is not necessarily suicidal and is not killed by his own weapon.

Another tactic endorsed by 'Azzām during jihad was the use of assassination which was not restricted to military targets. It could also be used on:

120 'Azzām, I'tān Al-Jihād, 12.
121 'Azzām, Jarīmat Qālī, 7.
• political leaders of a hostile country (he specifically mentioned Russian and communist leaders)
• every Jew who extended support and sympathy to Israel
• boastful anti-Muslim leaders of secular and atheist parties
• anyone who stood by Israel.\textsuperscript{124}

He based this view on the verse that says, “...then fight and slay the Pagans wherever ye find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem (of war)...”\textsuperscript{125} He also highlighted that the Prophet was reported to have commanded some of his companions to assassinate certain infidel leaders for their hostility towards him and the religion. Hence, 'Azzâm considered that it was important to revive this neglected tradition of the Prophet in order to deter the enemy during the Afghan jihad period.\textsuperscript{126} However, he was against the idea of assassinating leaders of Muslim countries in order to establish an Islamic state. Instead, he prescribed da’wah and preparation first.\textsuperscript{127}

'Azzâm stressed that the decision for an assassination mission must be referred to and approved by the 'ulamā' and leaders who held the mandate of the people. They, then, have to determine whether the potential benefits are indeed greater than the harm. In the case of leaders of Muslim countries, he ruled that the ‘ulamā’ must first make a case of apostasy vis-à-vis the targeted leader.\textsuperscript{128}

\textbf{Fighting in the sacred months and land}
The four sacred months known among Arabs during the period of the Prophet were Dhū Al-Qa‘dah (11\textsuperscript{th} month), Dhū Al-Hijjah (12\textsuperscript{th} month), Muḥāarram (1\textsuperscript{st} month) and Rajb (6\textsuperscript{th} month). Fighting and shedding blood during these months were regarded as abominable acts. Classical scholars however differed on whether the sanctity of these months should still be recognised after the Prophet’s era.

\textsuperscript{124} Azzâm, “Qawāim Muḥammad ibn Maslamah,” 4-6; Azzâm, \textit{Fi Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah}, 15.
\textsuperscript{125} The Qur’an, 9:5.
\textsuperscript{126} Azzâm, “Qawāim Muḥammad ibn Maslamah,” 4-6; Azzâm, \textit{Fi Zīlāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah}, 15.
\textsuperscript{127} Azzâm, \textit{Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād}, 35-7.
\textsuperscript{128} Ibid, 39.
‘Azzām held the view that the practice of abstaining from fighting during these months had been abrogated after the conquest of Mecca because the Prophet attacked the people of Taif in the month of Dhū Al-Qa’dah and a few months after it. Thus, Muslims are allowed to wage jihad anytime. This is more so, according to him, when jihad is fard ‘ayn because the Qur’ān says:

“They ask thee concerning fighting in the Prohibited Month. Say: "Fighting therein is a grave (offence); but graver is it in the sight of Allah to prevent access to the path of Allah, to deny Him, to prevent access to the Sacred Mosque, and drive out its members." Tumult and oppression are worse than slaughter...” (The Qur’ān, 2:217)

The Arabs also abhorred fighting and shedding blood in the sacred land of Mecca. This rule remains effective, according to ‘Azzām, except if it is transgressed upon first by the enemy.129 Thus, jihad operations in Afghanistan continued throughout the Islamic year.

**Personal ethics & attributes**

Apart from the right intention and conformance to the law of jihad, ‘Azzām also emphasised the importance of personal ethics for Muslim fighters. This will be elaborated in the section on ‘Azzām’s idea of Al-Qā’idah – the Muslim vanguard group.

**Desertion, retreat and withdrawal**

‘Azzām’s view on desertion, retreat and withdrawal is consistent with the classical strand.130 Thus, those who left jihad in Afghanistan for unacceptable reasons such as disillusionment or impatience risked committing the grave sin of abandoning jihad.

**Prisoners of war and the vanquished**

130 See Chapter 3, sub-section on Rules During Battle; ‘Azzām, “Kullu Nafs Wa Mas‘uliyatuhā”.
While 'Azzām acknowledged the difference of opinions among the classical scholars on the permissibility of killing enemy POWs, he was inclined to permit it, subject to the discretion of the authority. He cited two conditions that permit the killing – when a POW refuses to march along with the Muslim army or when he is injured and is incapable of marching, which would make him a serious liability.

Communist Afghans however were considered either zindiq (libertine/atheist) or apostates and were subject to the death penalty. Even if they were to repent following their capture, it was still permissible to kill them as punishment and deterrence to others. This, according to 'Azzām, was the rule held by the majority of classical Muslim scholars.

'Azzām agreed with the majority view that a captured infidel spy should be killed. For an infidel spy who was under any peace or non-hostility agreement such as dhimmah, truce or al-amān agreement, 'Azzām preferred the death penalty as deterrence to others. The punishment for captured Muslims who spy for the enemy, according to 'Azzām, is based on the discretion of the authority. The death penalty is, however, permissible.

On quṭṭā’ al-turuq, 'Azzām viewed that the punishment had been fixed by the Qur’ān. It was either:
- execution
- crucifixion
- banishment (imprisonment)
- cutting off one hand and the opposite leg

The choice of the above punishment is either based on the discretion of the Muslim authority or the severity of the offence.

---

132 Ibid, 54-5.
133 Ibid, 46-9; 'Azzām, Al-Sarāṭān Al-Aḥmar, 23.
It is not permissible, according to 'Azzām, to practice torture on POWs and the vanquished people.  

Others

'Azzām upheld the practice of bay'ah (pledge of allegiance) in jihad because it is a recognised tradition of the Prophet. The purpose, according to 'Azzām, is to strengthen one’s resolve and commitment to jihad. In that regard, he ruled on the permissibility of renewing it from time to time or for specific purposes such as before engaging in major operations. He based this on the practice of the Prophet who took a special bay’ah from his companions known to be the Bay’at Al-Ridwān. The bay’ah was made to avenge a companion, who had been killed while negotiating for the safe passage of Muslims to Mecca for pilgrimage.

Unlike many Islamic groups, 'Azzām did not view anything wrong with Muslims giving multiple bay’ah to different people or groups as the bay’ah that is practiced in this instance was not a bay’ah to a caliph.

'Azzām, however, cautioned that no bay’ah should demand total and unconditional obedience on all matters as such obedience is only reserved for God. Obedience to any human being must be conditional. At least, it should not contradict the sharī’ah. It has been established by all scholars that there is no obedience to anybody, who is in disobedience to God. Secondly, no bay’ah should prevent anybody from performing anything that is enjoined by the sharī’ah.

'Azzām considered that the state of war between Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb does not necessarily prohibit trade between the two domains or between subjects of both domains. However he was against the trading of harmful substances even if they were to infidels. During one of his travels to the inner part of Afghanistan with Hekmatyar, he came

137 'Azzām, Ḥithāf Al-‘Ībād, 10.
138 Ibid, 11.
across an opium plantation and subsequently questioned the owner. The owner explained that the opium was to be sold to infidels, implying that it was not for personal use and would not harm Muslims. Nonetheless 'Azzām asserted that Islam forbids all acts that were harmful whether to the one self or to others, and prohibited drug trade.\(^{139}\)

**Martyrs**

'Azzām regarded the highest form of martyrdom is that in jihad battle. He ruled any Muslim man, woman or children who died in battle sincerely for the sake of God regardless of whether they died immediately in battle or later due to injury, and whether at the hands of the enemy or due to friendly fire, including those who died fighting quṭṭā' al-turūq and bughāh, as martyrs. For 'Azzām, martyrs are the creators and shapers of the ummah. The greatness of the martyr’s position in God’s eyes and their reward should inspire Muslims to strive for it or at least aspire to die a martyr’s death. The yearning to achieve martyrdom in the battlefield helps fighters overcome the difficulties of jihad.\(^{140}\)

**Jihad and Irḥāb (Terrorism)**

'Azzām made no apologies that Islam makes irḥāb (contemporary Arab word used for terrorism) an obligation upon Muslims based on the Qurʾān and the ḥadīth.\(^{141}\)

God has said in the Qurʾān:

> "Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war, to strike terror into (the hearts of) the enemies..."\(^{142}\)

---

142. The Qurʾān, 8:60.
It is reported in a hadith narrated by Al-Bukhārī and Muslim that God has promised victory for the Prophet by instilling fear in the enemy’s heart, even when a Muslim army is at a distance of a month’s march.

‘Azzām even claimed that the Prophet was the first Muslim who struck fear and terror in the hearts of the infidels. The sign of true Islam, according to ‘Azzam, is that it is feared by the enemy. On the contrary, the sign of corrupted Islam is that it is liked by the enemy. ‘Azzām quoted the hadith:

“The People will soon summon one another to attack you just like people seated around a platter of food invite one another to consume that food.”

Someone asked, “Will that be because of our small numbers at that time?”

He replied, “No, you will be numerous at that time: but you will be froth and scum like that carried down by a torrent (of water), and Allāh will take the fear of you from the hearts of your enemy and cast al-wahn into your hearts.”

Someone asked, “O Messenger of Allāh, what is al-wahn?”

He replied, “Love of the world and dislike of death.” (Narrated by Abū Dāwud and Aḥmad)\(^1\)\(^{143}\)

Irhāb, in ‘Azzām’s view, is an extension of jihad. Commenting on the above verse, he wrote, “If there is no fighting (jihad), there will be no terror on the infidels. They, then, will never respect us. Without fighting, the enemy will not fear us, the religion will not be victorious and we will have no existence in this life.”\(^1\)\(^{144}\)

All the above are meanings extracted from ‘Azzam’s own words. Whether this would put ‘Azzam’s notion and practices of terrorism similar to what is held by the current Al-Qaeda and jihadist groups of the same ilk will be discussed in the concluding section of this chapter.

---

\(^1\)\(^{143}\) ‘Azzām, Muqaddimah, 43.

\(^1\)\(^{144}\) ‘Azzām, Silsilah Fī Al-Tarbīyah Vol. 2, 50.
For now, it is sufficient to note that the word irhab has two different meanings in Arabic use. The Qur’anic perspective of the word essentially refers to the concept of deterrence as understood in strategic studies. This can be implied from the Qur’anic verse that commands Muslims to strike fear in the enemy by getting “ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war”, not through indiscriminate or premeditated attacks on civilians. The second usage refers to what is currently known as terrorism, which implies a premeditated indiscriminate attack.

The Idea of Al-Qā‘idah

As mentioned in the beginning of this chapter, ‘Azzam, in his writings, highlighted the mutual interplay between the ideas of Al-Qā‘idah and jihad. ‘Azzām’s usage of Al-Qā‘idah also implies a relationship with Bin Laden’s Al-Qaeda, the most prominent jihadist group and proponent of contemporary jihadism.

‘Azzam expounded his idea of Al-Qā‘idah in his article Al-Qā‘idah Al-Šulbah which appeared in the April 1998 issue of Al-Jihad magazine. Some researchers have suggested that it was written as the founding document of Bin Laden’s Al-Qaeda. Due to the close nexus between ‘Azzām’s ideas of Al-Qā‘idah and jihad and their implied association with Bin Laden’s Al-Qaeda, it is crucial to look at his Al-Qā‘idah concept in order to understand his jihad ideas.

The concept

By Al-Qā‘idah, ‘Azzām was referring to a group of Muslims, functioning as the foundation upon which the ummah and its structure should be founded and developed. Its strength will establish God’s rule in this world, divert mankind from worldly preoccupations to the comprehensiveness of Islam and to resist and subdue the hostile jāhiliyyah.145

It also referred to the first generation of Muslims, i.e., the companions who after being educated and moulded by the Prophet himself, brought glory to Islam after the Prophet’s death through territorial expansion and civilisational contributions. This generation was what ‘Azzam envisioned Al-Qa‘idah to be. To re-invent this historical generation, the Prophet’s approach should be emulated.\textsuperscript{146} Al-Qa‘idah was to function as the Islamic Movement that will ignite the potential of the ummah.\textsuperscript{147}

In \textit{Al-Qa‘idah Al-Şulbah}, ‘Azzam explained the rationale for this group. He wrote “As long as the ideology – even if it originates from the Lord of the Worlds – does not find this self-sacrificing vanguard that spends everything in his possession for the sake of making its ideology prevail, this ideology will be still-born, perishing before it sees light and life.”\textsuperscript{148} ‘Azzam blamed the absence of Al-Qa‘idah among Muslims on the widespread mischief and destruction caused by jahifiyah.

\textit{The qualities}

‘Azzam listed the following essential qualities of Al-Qa‘idah:

- \textbf{Withstand tribulation}

‘Azzam believed that glory and victory belongs only to those who have passed God’s tribulations. He wrote: “Trial polishes the spirit, cleanses the soul and purifies the heart from meanness and pettiness.... The more tribulation there is, the closer victory gets...”\textsuperscript{149} Elsewhere, ‘Azzam likened Al-Qa‘idah to building blocks, which had to be burnt before they can be used as building foundations.

- \textbf{Asceticism/abstinence}

‘Azzam extolled the virtue of shedding worldly attachments and desires. He wrote:
"Abstinence is the very foundation of Jihad. Affluence is the biggest weakness that befalls nations, spoils their kids and undermines their humanity.... We can clearly see that Allah's Prophet adopted abstinence on purpose, and the same holds true of his companions, despite the fact that the world was at their feet." 150

- Deep conviction in the faith151, perseverance152 and devotion to God

This includes additional prayers at night. He wrote: "These additional prayers are provision for Jihad; they are its spirit and its life."153

- Al-Walā' (loyalty to Allah) and Al-Bara' (disassociation from kufr).

Staying true to these two principles will ensure that Al-Qā'īdah will not be swayed, unlike the Kemalists who had sold Palestine to Britain and abolished the Ottoman caliphate in exchange for power. 'Azzām wrote: "There are so many Kemalists in our nation who sold it for a piece of bread or a word of recognition or a glass or a prostitute. The lack of the sense of loyalty and devotion in the minds of many led them and those following them into the depths of hell."154

- Fully aware of the international conspiracy against Islam

In other articles, 'Azzām mentioned the following attributes of Al-Qā'īdah:

1. Truthful to Islamic principle
2. Defends Islam
3. Ready to sacrifice even one's life
4. Confronts jāhīfiyah
5. Free from worldly desires
6. Understands the confrontation between Islam and jāhīfiyah

150 Ibid.
151 Ibid.
152 Ibid.
153 Ibid.
154 Ibid.
7. Loves martyrdom
8. Possesses 'izzah (honour). 155

There is no contradiction between the attributes listed in the main article (Al-Qa‘idah Al-Şulbah) and the others. The above list can be subsumed under those that were mentioned in the former. In fact, there is no fundamental difference between the attributes specifically mentioned for Al-Qa‘idah and the general attributes of Muslim fighters in jihad mentioned previously.

The means

'Azzām believed that the means to regenerate Al-Qa‘idah is through a long process of tarbiyah (education) of the individuals, fundamentally, in matters of creed ('aqidah) similar to the Prophet’s 13 years in Mecca where he was preparing the early companions for greater responsibilities, which included managing an Islamic polity in Medina after the migration and waging jihad against the infidels. Without this long process of tarbiyah, “there is no chance for the believing society to come about, and if it came about without it (without that understanding) it would be like a house on sand blown away by the first storm or even a gust of wind”, 'Azzām wrote. 156

In 'Azzām’s view, there were several reasons why this long period of tarbiyah is crucial before embarking on jihad. It was to provide a code of conduct for those wanting to go on jihad, fuel them with the mental stamina and spiritual strength to persevere throughout the long process of jihad while successfully guarding themselves against the temptations which they may encounter along the way. 157

Integral to the tarbiyah process is God’s tribulation. 'Azzām wrote, “No mission can be divested of the element of testing.” 158 The most important school for tarbiyah is jihad and

157 Ibid.
158 Ibid.
its battlefield. He wrote, “The long Jihad will bring people’s qualities to the fore and highlight their potentials.”

It is in this regard that 'Azzām saw the jihad in Afghanistan as a fertile training ground for the regeneration of Al-Qā'idah. He attributed the success of jihad in Afghanistan to the existence of Islamic movements under the leadership of individuals such as Hekmatyar, Rabbānī, Sayyāf and Yūnus Khālīṣ who were already educated and trained by Islamic movements before the jihad and gained further strengths by their involvement in jihad.

Eight guiding principles
'Azzām listed eight principles for the tarbiyah of Al-Qā'idah:
1. It must jump into the fire of the toughest tests and into the waves of fierce trials.
2. The training leadership shares with them the testing march, the sweat and the blood. The leadership must be like the motherly warmth of a hen whose chicks grow under its wings, throughout the long period of hatching and training.
3. This vanguard has to abstain from cheap worldly pleasures and must bear its distinct stamp of abstinence and frugality.
4. In like manner it must be endowed with firm belief and trust in the ideology, instilled with a lot of hope for its victory.
5. There must be a strong determination and insistence to continue the march no matter how long it takes.
6. Travel provision is among the most important items on this march. The provision consists of meditation, patience and prayer.
7. Loyalty and devotion.
8. They must grasp anti-Islam machinations all over the world.\textsuperscript{160}

\textsuperscript{159}Ibid.
\textsuperscript{160}Ibid.
In ʿAzzām’s view, not every Muslim can be Al-Qāʿidah but every Muslim is obligated to support Al-Qāʿidah with their money and lives.

**Commenting on ʿAzzām**

ʿAzzām’s jihad ideas are essentially classical with a militant bent. Some of the features which characterized ʿAzzām’s jihad ideas as classical militant are:

- Jihad means fighting the infidels
- Jihad is perpetual war between Muslims and infidels
- The basis of relationship between Muslims and infidels is war, not peace
- The objective of jihad is not just self-defence but to establish Islam above all religions and ideologies
- Reclaiming land that was part of Dar Al-Islām from the infidels is an act of self-defence against transgression
- Glorification of everything and everyone related to jihad (armed fighting for Islam).
- Incitement of Muslims to practice jihad

Indeed, a substantial part of ʿAzzām’s jihad ideas are continuous with classical tradition, but with a salafiy take on theological issues. The ideas are characterised by great deference to the opinions held by classical scholars, strict adherence to the classical scholars’ methodology of ijtiḥad or deduction from the Qurʾān and the ḥadīths, based primarily on three important sciences popularly known as Ṣūlūl Al-Fiqh (Science of Islamic Jurisprudence), Ṣūlūl Al-Taḥṣīl (Science of Interpreting the Qurʾān) and Ṣūlūl Al-Ḥadīth (Science of Ḥadīth). The approach is essentially literalist and textualist in nature.

However, the fundamental problem with ʿAzzām is that such an approach gives precedence to the opinions of classical scholars, which are contingent on the contexts in which they were formulated. It restricts the understanding of classical viewpoints to literal and textual analysis, and denies perspectives generated from other disciplines such as the social sciences and humanities which are equally relevant to the study of ideas and laws.
In ‘Azzām’s classification of lands into Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb, he essentially applied what had been formulated by classical scholars and sidestepped the differences in the context then and now. This is despite the fact that such classification was an ijtihād (rational deduction) of the scholars and not an injunction from the Qur’ān and ḥadīth. Thus, Muslim scholars are not obligated to adhere to it.

Another problem in ‘Azzām’s approach is his neglect of contemporary international conventions on war in his formulation of jihad ideas, thus, potentially ignoring the established legal maxim in Islamic jurisprudence, Al-‘Ādah Muḥakamah – custom/convention as a binding law. Based on ‘Azzām’s own view on the importance of Muslims to abide with all contractual agreements, it could be argued that the ratification of the Geneva Conventions by Muslim countries binds Muslims who are citizens of those Muslim states. Muslims in non-Muslim countries are also bound, based on the above points, to follow the law. Thus, the practice and understanding of jihad cannot be oblivious to these rules or they will risk breaching them.

There are two aspects of ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas which depart from the classical viewpoint. His ruling on the contemporary practice of “martyrdom operations” has no precedent in classical works. Classical works refer to daring acts in the battlefiled where the risk of death was high and even if a person was killed, it would not be by his own weapons. The other aspect is the permissibility of armed rebellion against a ruler – a position that a majority of classical scholars would have serious reservations about. On this issue, ‘Azzām ruled that jihad against the ruling Afghan regime carried the same ruling as jihad against the invading Soviet army. He suggested that jihad in Afghanistan did not begin when the Soviet army invaded the country but had begun earlier against the local communist regime. In this respect, ‘Azzām, like other jihadist groups, resorted to takfīr – branding the rulers of the local Afghan regimes as apostates for their communist ideology and persecuting Afghans on the basis of their religion. ‘Azzām, however, disapproved of using this same tactic against the ruling regimes in the Arab countries, because the conditions were not as favourable as in Afghanistan.
Nonetheless, it should be pointed out that 'Azzām’s jihad ideas also carried features of restraint that distinguished it from the jihadism practiced by the Egyptian groups that had preceded him and the current Al-Qaeda network. The latter has become more permissive and trans-national in nature. This restraint could also be seen from his recognition of modern diplomatic relations as valid peaceful agreements and visas as equal to the classical al-amān concept in Islam. Muslims, thus, are not allowed to launch any attacks on infidel countries as long as this relationship stands, or to attack any infidel who enters Muslim countries with a valid visa.  

While 'Azzām had made a ruling that rulers of Muslim countries who were found guilty of apostasy and those who supported Israel may be attacked, he also laid down several conditions to restrict the practice. He asserted that consultations must be made with a council of 'ulamā’, who will then issue a fatwā, before the attack. Such attacks should not cause greater harm to Islam and Muslims. Thus, the matter cannot be decided by any individual or group independent of a credible religious authority.

'Azzām’s notion of jihad to establish an Islamic state was mass-based and not uncoordinated jihad waged by disparate groups against the authority. Thus, he did not consider acts of assassinating apostate leaders practiced by some jihadist groups as the right way to bring down the jāhiliyyah system.

During the Afghan jihad, 'Azzām had not sent foreign Muslim fighters to launch attacks against the Soviet Union’s interests outside the Afghan battlefield as practiced by the resistance or terrorist groups of his time. Except for limited operations against the Soviet army based in border regions, the hinterland of the Soviet Union and its civilians were largely spared from any attacks. This is starkly different from the practice of Chechen jihadists against the Russians. There has been no evidence that 'Azzām had urged Muslims to attack the enemy wherever they are found as practiced by Al-Qaeda today.

\[161\] 'Azzām, Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 14-8, 50.
\[162\] 'Azzām, Al-As’īlah Wa Al-Ajwihah, 6, 11, 43-4; 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām, “Usud Khidābuhum Dam Al-Usud,” Al-Jihād, 31 (June 1987): 4-7.
Instead he had called on Muslims to travel to Afghanistan in order to wage jihad against infidels there. `Azzām’s involvement in jihad in Palestine and Afghanistan had been primarily a defensive act against external aggressions.

It can then be said that the aforementioned idea of īrāb (terror) found in `Azzam’s works referred to the concept of deterrence and not terrorism as it is conventionally used today. This can be further supported by `Azzām’s assertion:

“In Islam, ends do not justify means; Islam disputes Machiavelli’s idea (ends justify means) or Lenin’s idea (for the sake of benefit, do whatever you wish). For instance, Islam honours agreements and treaties; it therefore does not allow the liberation of a city by breaching an agreement or forsaking a treaty. Likewise, Islam does not allow the killing of children and the kidnapping of women for the sake of inducing pressure on the enemy.”¹⁶³

Having said that however, `Azzām’s strict adherence to the classical view that non-fighters can be targeted if they contributed to hostilities against Islam via ideas, wealth and other means, could be used to justify terrorism in today’s context.

¹⁶³ `Azzam, T’lān Al-Jihād, 9.
CHAPTER 5

FRAMING JIHAD FOR MOBILISATION

Introduction

After the in-depth study of the source of "Azzām"s jihad ideas, this chapter will explain the workings of "Azzām"s ideas using the framing perspective of the social mobilisation theory (SMT). The assumption is that the critical issue in "Azzām"s brand of jihad as well as that of other jihadists is not the ideas per se but how the ideas function as an ideology in order to achieve specific political objectives.

Most proponents of the framing perspective hold that framing was often used to persuade people to act or subscribe to the ideas that underlie an act. Frames are also constructed by social entrepreneurs when they tap on their cultural and cognitive stocks, which includes among others, worldview and ideas. Thus, it is important to understand the worldview and ideas of a person or movement before understanding and analysing the frame.

This chapter will answer the following research questions: 1) How did "Azzām" frame his jihad ideas? 2) How did the context in which he lived influence his ideas? 3) How did he use that context to frame his ideas in order to achieve his objectives?

Because the concept of framing is essential to understanding this chapter, it will be useful to recapitulate the concept, the model that underpins it, the rationale for its choice and its intended use in this research work, as elaborated in the first chapter.

"Frame" here refers to an interpretive lens that simplifies and condenses the complexity of the world. It helps individuals to interpret, perceive and label events in their lives and indeed the world. Like a camera lens that includes or excludes elements of a scene, a frame punctuates and encodes, includes and excludes, objects, situations, events and experiences so that meanings may be derived.
The framing model used in this work is Snow et. al's collective action frames. In this model, a frame is not only a lens by which to interpret and provide meanings to events but it is a means of mobilising target audiences to change situations that have been defined as unjust.

A collective action frame constitutes three key elements or sub-frames:

- Diagnostic frame that defines the problem or unjust situation requiring change and attributes its causal agent, i.e. who is to be blamed.
- Prognostic frame that defines the solution to the said problem and attributes its causal agent, i.e. who is responsible to change the situation.
- Mobilising frame that rationalises the “call to arms” and motivates people to action.

All contemporary scholars of SMT and framing stress that ideas and frames are not merely cognitive products that are fixed and static. Ideas and frames are concurrently shaping and are shaped by the context.

In this regard, scholars have recommended the dynamic approach in analysing ideational elements which requires investigating how each cognitive element (i.e. worldview, jihad ideas and frame), influence and are being influenced by each other; and how these cognitive elements influence and are being influenced by the context (i.e. political structure and opportunity, resources, targeted audiences and opposition forces).

The result of this would be the presence of multiple frames that are incoherent or contradictory due to responses to, or influences from various interacting elements such as different audiences, changes of opportunity, internal constraints, ideational revisions and counter-forces. The same dynamic also would have caused frames to evolve over time. Ideas and frames in this regard are dynamic, emergent and contested.

On a similar note, Mark Juergensmeyer writes, “But it [religion] does not ordinarily lead to violence. That happens only with the coalescence of a peculiar set of circumstances –
political, social, and ideological – when religion becomes fused with violent expressions of social aspirations, personal pride, and movements for political change.”¹

This chapter will attempt to capture this dynamism by using framing to analyse Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s jihad ideas with the hope that it will generate better understanding and, when necessary, better responses to his ideas.

It is important to highlight that Snow et. al’s model of framing is used primarily here as a tool to analyse Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s ideas dynamically, and not to validate the model through its application on Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s jihad ideas. Thus, the chapter will give greater focus to Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s jihad ideas rather than the application of the model itself.

This chapter begins with an analysis of Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s worldview and the contextual factors that contributed to its Islamist character. It identifies, from Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s ideas elaborated in the preceding chapter, two collective action frames – distinct but inter-related – whose functions are to effect mobilisation. These frames are jihad to defend Afghanistan, and jihad for Islamism.

The chapter then proceeds with a detailed analysis of the two frames using Snow et. al. framing model. The analysis seeks to strip the components of the frames according to the model, i.e. the frame resonance/alignment and the frame resonance strategy. This is to understand the potency of Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s ideas in effecting mobilisation during the Soviet-Afghan War period.

The chapter also highlights inconsistencies found in Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī’s ideas and points out their utility value for counter-jihadism work.

Finally, the chapter illustrates some challenges faced by Ḥāfīz al-Ḥāfiẓ Aḥmad b. Ḥabīb al-Ṭūsī in the form of counter-frames that also underscored some of the contextual factors that shaped his ideas.

Azzam's Worldview and Jihad Ideas

Based on the preceding chapters, it is clear that Azzam held an Islamist worldview which can be traced to his long affiliation to the Jordanian chapter of the Muslim Brothers. He was reportedly talent-spotted by the Muslim Brothers at a young age due to his intelligence and piety. The head of the Jordanian Muslim Brothers paid him frequent visits to keep track of his development.

Azzam was not a low-ranking follower or mere sympathiser of the Muslim Brothers. He provided military training to delegations from Syria sent by Marwan Hadid, one of the leaders of the Syrian Muslim Brothers, during his involvement with the resistance movement. He also had access to the family of the late Sayyid Qutb, namely, Muhammad Qutb, Hamida Qutb, Aminah Qutb and her husband Kamal Al-Sananiry - the person who was responsible for convincing Azzam to join the jihad in Afghanistan. Unless Azzam was a recognised senior member of the Brothers, such close relations and collaborations would not have been possible due to the strict internal security measures practiced by the Brothers against external threat.

This indicates that Azzam must have gone through the Muslim Brothers' extensive tarbiyah program to qualify for such a position in the group and thus explaining Azzam's Islamist tendency. During the tarbiyah program, he must have been exposed to Qutb's ideas which were then required reading. Azzam himself had, by his own admission, been attracted to Qutb's ideas whom he described as of the most influential persons in shaping his Islamic worldview.

1 Azzam, Fit Zilal Surat Al-Tawbah, 3; Azzam, Fi Al-Jihad: Fiqh Wa Ijtihad, 77.
3 Azzam, Haumas, 14; Azzam, Fit Zilal Surat Al-Tawbah, 10; Azzam, Muqaddimah, 82-3; Azzam, Dhikrayat Filisstin, 9.
5 Azzam, “Sayyid Qutb”, 7; Azzam, Silsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 11, 12-3; Azzam, Silsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 3, 10-2; Azzam, A Message of Youth, 4.
In this regard, ‘Azzām shared two broad ideological characteristics with jihadist groups: Islamist worldview and militant jihad ideas.

In studying ‘Azzām’s worldview and jihad ideas, it can be concluded that jihad in ‘Azzām’s view was not the end but a means for Islamism, albeit an important one compared non-violent means. ‘Azzām held that the ultimate glory and victory of Islam over other religions and ideologies can only be achieved through armed jihad.

However, a study of Islamism reveals that not all Islamists subscribe to the militant jihad viewpoint of ‘Azzām and not all members of the Muslim Brothers hold such a view. At least three senior Muslim scholars known to be affiliated with the Muslim Brothers have shown distinct differences with ‘Azzām on the issue of jihad. These are Sa‘īd Ramadān Al-Būṭī, a senior Syrian scholar, Yūsuf Al-Qarādāwī a well-known scholar in the Muslim world, and Fayṣal Mawlāwī, a leader of the Lebanese chapter of the Muslim Brothers.

Al-Būṭī’s view of jihad, discussed in the third chapter of this volume, is reformist. Al-Qarādāwī’s view, as reflected in his recent book on jihad, does not fundamentally differ from Al-Būṭī’s. Mawlāwī, in one of his treatises available on his personal website, clearly seeks to construct a theological basis for peaceful relationships and cooperation between Muslims and non-Muslims on the basis of universal values and common benefits.

---

7See Chapter 4, subsection on Only jihad guarantees the survival of Islam.
8Ibid. subsection on The Pinnacle of Islam.
9Ibid, section on ‘Azzām’s Worldview.
10See Chapter 3, section on Reformist Viewpoint.
12Mawlāwī, Al- Mafāthim Al-Asāṣiyah, chapter 3.
This thus raises the question. Despite sharing the same worldview and being raised on the same tradition of the Muslim Brothers, why was 'Azzām’s jihad viewpoint inclined to the militant strand?

The answer is both ideational and contextual. From an ideational perspective, 'Azzām held that the final revelation on jihad calls upon Muslims to wage jihad against non-Muslims unconditionally, and had abrogated previous verses that sanctioned jihad for the purpose of self-defence. Juxtaposing this with 'Azzām’s other view that all non-Muslims are inherently hostile towards Muslims and will never cease to oppose them until they abandoned the religion, leads to the conclusion that jihad against non-Muslims is inevitable and a necessity for the survival and supremacy of Islam.

This distinguishes 'Azzām from the other three scholars who reject the abrogation argument and the generalisation that all non-Muslims are inherently hostile.

Two points can be made on the ideational influence on 'Azzām’s militant jihad viewpoint. Firstly, as mentioned earlier, it had set jihad as the means and not the end. Secondly, it functioned as 'Azzām’s frame in mobilising people for jihad.

From a contextual perspective, three events contributed significantly to 'Azzām’s inclination towards the militant strand of jihad. The first was, in his own words, the humiliating experience of witnessing the defeat of the Arab military forces and the capture of his family’s land by the Israeli forces during the 1967 war. While the event justified his engagement in armed jihad, albeit for the reason of self-defence, it affirmed his view of the hostile nature of non-Muslims. To him, the aggression originated not

13 See Chapter 4, section on Stages of Revelation and Conclusion.
14 Ibid, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview.
16 See Chapter 1, section on 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām: His life and role during the Soviet-Afghan War.
17 See Chapter 4, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview.
only from Israel but also from non-Muslim countries that supported the country politically and militarily.¹⁸

Secondly was his participation in armed resistance against the Israeli occupation. He and like-minded Muslims organised the resistance forces in the occupied territories from Jordan under the auspices of the main resistance organisation, the PLO. They had their own base known as the Shuyük (Elders/Scholars) Base. This continued for almost two years before the Jordanian government banned all such activities following the 1970 Palestinian rebellion against the monarch.¹⁹

‘Azzām admitted that this period was among the most meaningful of his life, apart from his involvement in the Afghan jihad. To him all his life was in vain except for his involvement in jihad in Palestine and Afghanistan.²⁰

His experience of witnessing miracles during battles, achieving battle successes and gaining respect due to his exploits fuelled the fire in him, strengthened his resolve on jihad and convinced him that jihad was the right way. For ‘Azzām, jihad was not only legitimate but also a way to erase the humiliation, retrieve the confidence and pride in Muslims and reinstate Islam’s glorious past. After the ban on all armed resistance activities in Jordan, he kept looking forward to recreating the experience in other places until the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan.²¹ Juergensmeyer described this as a sense of empowerment in place of a sense of humiliation, desperation and marginalisation.²²

Thirdly was ‘Azzām’s involvement in the jihad against the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan in mobilising, recruiting and managing the foreign fighters. This historic event, from his militant jihad perspective, validated his view of the hostile nature of non-
Muslims towards Islam and reaffirmed his jihad experience against Israel on a greater scale. In addition, his emphasis on jihad above other means suited his role best as the mobiliser, recruiter and organiser of jihad. No one in his position would have turned to the reformist viewpoint of jihad because it lacks the militancy needed for effective mobilisation.

It is important to note that all of 'Azzām’s elaborations on his militant jihad ideas were recorded either in print or in audiocassette during this period. Thus, one should not discount the influence of the jihad in Afghanistan and the role that it played on the development of his jihad ideas. ‘Azzām did not publish materials on jihad prior to his involvement in Afghanistan. His death before the conflict came to an end after the fall of the local Afghan regime in 1992 means that there are no other records except those produced in the period of the Soviet-Afghan war.

After examining the ideational and contextual factors that influenced ‘Azzām’s militant jihad, the next question to be answered is which of the two factors had greater influence.

It is argued here that contextual factors played the greater role in shaping ‘Azzām’s militant jihad and the following three points are offered to support this assertion.

Firstly, a look into ‘Azzām’s history indicates that there was no involvement in armed jihad activities from 1971, when a ban was placed on all resistance activities in Jordan, until his participation in the Afghan jihad in the early 1980s. It is instructive to note that despite his militant jihad viewpoint, he did not organise his own jihad group in Jordan or join any existing jihad group while he was studying for his Ph.D in Egypt. This is significant considering that there were numerous armed activities organised by Palestinian and jihadist groups at the time.

Secondly, ‘Azzām lamented that one of the reasons he could not wage armed jihad against Israeli occupation was due to the suppression by the Arab authorities through
strict border controls. Armed resistance was not possible without direct confrontation with these authorities, and thus would only cause greater detriment.\textsuperscript{23}

The third point is `Azzām's affiliation to the Muslim Brothers which was significant in moderating `Azzām's practice of jihad, despite its ideational importance and emphasis. This was because by the early 1970s the Muslim Brothers had eschewed the use of violence in favour of peaceful democratic process and was working towards reconstituting its own idea of jihad. The Muslim Brothers is also known for its pragmatic approach to its struggle compared to many other Islamic movements.\textsuperscript{24} As a senior member of the Muslim Brothers, `Azzām had to abide by the group's general policy and restrain his practice of jihad.

Fourthly, `Azzām wrote a paper titled Al-Īslām Wa Mustaqbal Al-Bāshārīyah (Islam and the Future of Humanity) in 1980, a year before his participation in Afghan jihad. In this paper, `Azzām argued that humanity was in a very sorry state due to the spiritual void and psychological crisis that secularism had caused in distancing human beings from spiritual guidance, i.e. the religion. He asserted that Islam is the only force that could offer a remedy. What is interesting is that, unlike his Islamist stance during his participation in the Afghan jihad, the mention of jihad in the paper is negligible and the element of militant jihad (i.e. framing jihad as the ultimate means and call for participation in armed jihad) is absent.\textsuperscript{25} In fact the word "jihad" and its derivatives are used only six times in the 11,000-word paper and are only mentioned in the context of refuting those who viewed jihad as purely defensive.\textsuperscript{26}

In addition, the document also contained `Azzām's early concept of Al-Qā'idah Al-Șūbah (the core group) and four points of action to save humanity. Unlike his article in 1988 which was dedicated to the concept, `Azzām did not place strong emphasis on

\textsuperscript{23}`Azzām, The Defence Of Muslims' Land (Chapter2); `Azzām, Dhikrayat Fī ~ilal Surat Al-Tawbah, 4-12, 43-5; `Azzām, Fī ~ilal Surat Al-Tawbah, 154-5.


\textsuperscript{25}`Azzām, Al-Īslām Wa Mustaqbal Al-Bāshārīyah, 1-15.

\textsuperscript{26}`Ibid, 23.
armed jihad. There was no mention of the importance of armed jihad in building the character of Al-Qaeda. The four points of action also did not include jihad and jihad was not mentioned in the explanation of any of the points.\textsuperscript{27}

It could then be argued that the above four points indicate clearly that 'Azzām's ideas and practices of jihad were very much shaped by external contextual factors, not only in affirming his militant tendency, but also in restraining jihad practices and limiting their proliferation.

In the subsequent section, it will be argued that the contextual factors provided him with the opportunity to practice militant jihad and catapult his ideas onto the global stage, thus releasing him from the abovementioned policy of the Muslim Brothers.

**From Worldview to Collective Action Frames**

This section seeks to reconstruct 'Azzām's collective action frame as defined earlier for the purpose of mobilising Muslims.

Two main frames can be identified from 'Azzām's jihad ideas. The first frame which emerged in his early writings was jihad for defending Afghanistan against the Soviet invasion and helping the oppressed fellow Afghan Muslims.

The second was jihad for Islamism. This frame was less prevalent in 'Azzām's early material when he initially joined the Afghan jihad but was used subsequently in parallel with the first. However, it differed from the first in its diagnosis, prognosis, broad scope and inclusiveness. This makes it suitable as a master frame.

*First frame: Jihad for defending Afghanistan*

'Azzām's diagnosis in this frame was that the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan with the help of the local communist Afghans was a transgression of a Muslim territory, life,

\textsuperscript{27}Ibid, 23-7.
property and honour. He ruled that this transgression was ḥarām (forbidden) and must be corrected. Islam has made it obligatory that Muslims stop any transgression and it is obligatory to protect Muslim territory from non-Islamic forces and reclaim any occupied Muslim territory from the establishment and perpetuation of kufr (disbelief). Strategically also, the occupation of Afghanistan by the atheistic communist Soviet power posed a serious threat to neighbouring Muslim countries such as Pakistan and the Gulf States. The cause of this problem was the Soviet occupation forces and its local communist agents.\textsuperscript{28}

There were no other solution to this problem other than waging defensive jihad and although the primary duty of this fell on the Afghans, all Muslims were obligated to share the responsibility with the Afghans. Thus, it was obligatory for all able-bodied Muslims to travel to Afghanistan and participate in jihad.\textsuperscript{29}

To encourage participation, \textquotesingle Azzām used a combination of motivations that were positive and negative; religious and strategic; and personal and altruistic. Positive motivations encompassed the promise of a noble status accorded to martyrs, redemption of all sins, salvation in heaven while the negative motivation included reminders of the great sin of non-compliance of an important fard āyn, namely defensive jihad. Both were also religious and personal in nature. The strategic motivation was the threat posed by the presence of Soviet military bases in Afghanistan to all Gulf States within range of Soviet missiles, bombers and fighter planes. Altruistic motivation was the fight for the political and religious freedom of the Afghans and the removal of their suffering.

The key element of this frame was the defence and liberation of Afghanistan from a foreign aggressor and its local collaborator.

\textit{Second frame: Jihad for Islamism}

\textsuperscript{28} Azzām, \textit{The Defence Of Muslims' Land} (Chapter 4); Azzām, \textit{Join the Caravan} (Part 2 & 3); Azzām, \textit{The Signs of Ar-Rahman}, 7.

\textsuperscript{29} Ibid, (Chapter 1, 2 &3); Ibid, (Part 3 & Conclusion).
For 'Azzām, Islamism was not just a worldview for guiding his jihad ideas but also a frame for mobilising Muslims from all over the world for jihad. This can be seen in the way Islamism was linked to the call for jihad in Afghanistan in the first frame.

In this second frame, 'Azzām diagnosed that the main problem was the humiliating status of Islam and Muslims which he attributed to internal and external factors. The former referred to Muslims who had abandoned the religion and adopted secular ideologies as their worldview and practiced Islam only ritualistically. External factors refer to non-Muslims who unceasingly conspired against Islam and Muslims in order to perpetuate kufr (disbelief). The larger consequence of this is the widespread human suffering due to the degradation of civilisation and humanity.30

'Azzām’s prognosis was the establishment of an Islamic state in any part of the world as a base for the full implementation of the shari‘ah and Islam as the way of life so as to generate a dedicated core group (Al-Qā‘idah Al-Ṣulbah) that would function as the catalyst for the rebirth of a true Islamic community, as exemplified by the first Muslim generation (salaf), thus reinstating Islam’s supremacy over other religions and ideologies. The responsibility of transforming this prognosis into reality fell on the shoulders of all Muslims, and the means was through waging jihad.31

'Azzām argued that Afghanistan provided the best opportunity and the most fertile ground for realising these ideals as Muslims could practice and experience real jihad that had been denied in other Muslim countries. Unlike in other countries, jihad in Afghanistan received wide support from the people and was led by those who shared the Islamist worldview. He argued that the Palestinian struggle was, in contrast, led by un-Islamic groups. Thus, jihad in Afghanistan provided not only a suitable base for an Islamic state but the people (Afghans and non-Afghans) to be groomed as the core group.

30See Chapter 4, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview.
31Ibid, section on The Idea of Al-Qā‘idah.
In addition to this were the great rewards promised in Islam for jihad participants and the freedom for the Afghans to practice their belief.\(^\text{32}\)

The key element of this second frame is the establishment of an Islamic state or caliphate being the central idea in Islamism.

*Analysing both frames*

'Azzâm's writings may be divided into four categories or subjects: 1) jihad in Afghanistan and jihad rulings, 2) Islamic laws such as those pertaining to ḥalāl meat, marriages and contracts, 3) Islamic worldview, and 4) issues of the day.

There were books written for each category. The first frame, that of defending Afghanistan, can be found in the first category while the second frame, that of jihad for Islamism, can be found in the third and fourth categories. This research does not cover the second category as it has little relevance to the present topic.

The review of materials in the first, third and fourth category showed that both frames formed a distinct narrative. They do not form a sub-narrative for the other. Although each is related to the other, the relation is not inclusive. In other words, each frame can exist independently.

It is on this basis that this research seeks to reconstruct two different collective action frames from his writings, instead of reconciling both into one.

Early print materials relevant in verifying 'Azzâm's first frame are two of his early jihad treatises and his articles published in his *Al-Jihād* magazine. The two jihad treatises are *Ayāt Al-Rahmān Fī Jihād Al-Afghān* (The Signs of Al-Rahmān [Allah the Merciful] in the Jihad in Afghanistan) and *Al-Dīfā' 'An Araḍī Al-Muslimīn* (Defence of Muslim Lands) in 1983 and 1984 respectively.

\(^{32}\)Ibid.
Although the two treatises were published in 1983 and 1984, it is important to note that the ideas must have been conceived much earlier. This is particularly significant as *Al-Difa* is the shorter version of the original draft.33

*Ayāt Al-Rahmān* documented miracles encountered by Muslim fighters in their struggles against the enemy. The call and ruling related to jihad is only touched upon towards the end34 and the key element of the second frame is absent. *Al-Difa*', his most famous jihad treatise, was written primarily as an elaborate fatwā that jihad in Afghanistan was fard 'āyn upon Muslims, with the clear objective of mobilising Muslims to support and join the struggle.35 The key element of the second frame (i.e. jihad for Islamism) was only mentioned in two short paragraphs in the whole document.36

Similar arguments were also discerned from his articles written during the first year (1984) of *Al-Jihād* magazine. The key element of the second frame is sparsely touched upon. Most of the articles were about the need to defend Afghanistan through jihad.

The reason for the formation of the first frame was because 'Azzām, as a non-native of Afghanistan was still familiarising himself with the general level of religiosity, religious orientation and norms in Afghanistan. This was important in order for him to gain trust and acceptance.

In this regard, the frame suited the situation because it dealt directly with the problem at hand (i.e. the Soviet invasion) and it appealed to the basic sense of injustice in all human beings. Compared to the second, the first frame was the surest option because it resonated with Afghans in general. This helped to elevate his position among the locals.

Although the first frame was theologically grounded, its narrow focus and nationalist bent, i.e. jihad for the liberation of Afghanistan, did not sit well with 'Azzām's Islamist

34 'Azzam, *The Signs of Ar-Rahman*, 60-75.
35 'Azzam, *The Defence Of Muslims' Land* (Chapter 1, 2 & 3).
36 Ibid, *(Chapter 2, 4).*
worldview. For Islamists, jihad has to serve a broader agenda than the liberation of Afghanistan from foreign invasion. The Islamist worldview dictates the establishment of the supreme political power of Islam, where Muslims and non-Muslims submit to its rule.

As an Islamist who was often judged by the consistency of his actions with the worldview that he believed in, ‘Azzām had to be true to himself and to his fellow Islamists. This is the hallmark of an Islamist which ‘Azzām himself demanded from jihad participants in Afghanistan.

After he had familiarised himself with the situation and succeeded in building good relationships with leaders of various Afghan groups, ‘Azzām was convinced that his worldview was also shared by the leaders whom he called the sons of the Islamic movement (a term usually referring to Islamist groups).37 According to him, they were products of the Islamic movement’s tarbiyah (education) and they had expressed commitment to the establishment of an Islamic state in Afghanistan and subsequently extending jihad to other occupied Muslims lands such as Palestine.38

This encouraged ‘Azzām to construct the second frame and to use it concurrently with the first.

In 1986, ‘Azzām wrote in ‘Ibar Wu Baṣāir Li Al-Jihād Fī ʿĀsr Al-Ḥādir (Lessons and Learning Points for Jihad in Contemporary Time) that jihad was to serve the mission of spreading Islam to all. To him, land has no value unless it is ruled in accordance to God’s dictates and shari‘ah. Jihad is an injunction and also a necessity in view of the obstructions laid down by jahiliyyah.39

The second frame also served an important mobilisation objective to recruit jihad participants from two significant segments of Muslims. They were:

---

• members of non-jihadist Islamist groups. The frame appealed to this segment as jihad in Afghanistan was a legitimate defensive act recognised by the shari`ah and it provided the opportunity to serve the Islamist cause through the dissemination of the Islamist worldview among the local and foreign jihad participants, and the enhancement of the education and training of Islamist cadres;

• members of jihadist groups, such as the Egyptian Al-Jama`ah Al-Islāmīyah, that were already waging unsuccessful campaigns against their local Muslim rulers. For this segment, jihad in Afghanistan suited their jihadist tendency and provided them with the training base for their members and safe havens for their leaders. Participation in Afghan jihad would not only help their vision of establishing an Islamic state in Afghanistan but would subsequently enhance the jihad that they have been waging unsuccessfully against their own governments.

Although these two frames were different in content, they were used to fulfil each other’s objective. The basic appeal of the sense of injustice in the first frame resonated with the general Muslim population regardless of their level of religiosity or religious orientation (i.e. ṣufī, traditionalist, salafī, activist etc.). It was rooted primarily on the legitimacy of the act of self defence and the nobility of the Afghans in defending their homeland. Their participation in Afghan jihad would not only increase the number of fighters in the field but also expose them to the Islamist worldview propagated by `Azzām and supported by local Afghan leaders. The exposure and socialisation process throughout their stay in Afghanistan converted these Muslims into supporters of the Islamist worldview.

The second frame which appealed to the two specific segments brought in volunteer leaders, preachers and trainers who helped in circulating the Islamist worldview among all jihad participants including ordinary Afghans, strengthened Islamist control of the struggle and improved the effectiveness of jihad.

In conclusion, the two frames contributed to the realisation of each frame’s prognosis of the problem, i.e. the liberation of Afghanistan (for the first frame) and the subsequent
establishment of an Islamic state in Afghanistan and the spread of Islamist worldview among Muslims (for the second frame).

Understanding the dynamic interaction between ideational and contextual elements, as mentioned above, has been useful in understanding the emergence of these two different frames and their concurrent use by 'Azzâm.

**Frame Resonance/Alignment**

For a collective action frame to fulfil its function, it must resonate with the target audience. Under Snow et. al.'s model, this is achieved by aligning the frame with the individual’s interests, values and beliefs. There are six factors that affect frame resonance under this model: 1) Frame consistency; 2) Empirical credibility; 3) Credibility of the frame’s promoters; 4) Experiential commensurability; 5) Centrality; and 6) Narrative fidelity.

The focus of this section is to analyse the presence of the above factors in 'Azzâm’s jihad ideas that would provide insights to its appeal and the dynamic behind their construction.

**The first frame – defending Afghanistan**

There is a high degree of consistency in the narrative of the first frame. The consistency here refers to its logical complementariness in its different aspects i.e. tactics, diagnosis, prognosis, core values and beliefs. Firstly, the call for jihad to defend Afghanistan is consistent with the universal idea that people have the right to resist foreign occupation. This is clearly stated in the UN Charter.

Secondly, there was little contention among the majority of Muslim scholars on the legitimacy of jihad in Afghanistan. The theological position on this has already been

---

deliberated at length in the first chapter from the classical, traditional, reformist and militant strands. In this regard, the call for jihad is consistent with the frame’s diagnosis and struck a chord with the core values of Muslims that Islam enjoins them to uphold justice, help the oppressed and obligates defensive jihad.

Thirdly, in term of tactics, i.e. armed jihad, it has been commented in the fourth chapter that the overall tactical conduct of jihad by ‘Azzām had been restraint with no report of indiscriminate targeting of civilians or acts of terrorism. This is consistent with the ethics of jihad.

Although the issue of occupation was contested by certain segments of the international community especially those who were allies of the Soviet Union, it resonated with the majority of leaders of Muslim countries and indeed Muslims at large.

To support the credibility of the frame, ‘Azzām invoked historical and contemporary evidence of the ill-treatment of Muslims living under the ruling communist regime of the Soviet Union in the form of genocide, denial of religious freedom and annexation of Muslim lands in Central Asia.42 Moreover, ‘Azzām made reference to the attempts of the communist regime to impose communism on the local people and challenged their religious values.43 In addition, ‘Azzām also highlighted the suffering, displacement and killing of millions of Afghans.44

This resonance was boosted by the wide media coverage naturally drawn due to its news relevance, and encouraged by the United States and its Western allies as part of the Cold War politics against the communist Soviet Union.

Knowing the high deference given to classical sources and in line with his training as a scholar, ‘Azzām used classical resources to support his argument. This also added to the

42 Azzām, Al-Saraṭān Al-Ahmar, 23-6.
credibility of his frame and its arguments and consistency. He further sought endorsements for his call for jihad in Afghanistan from many prominent scholars of the time which included the late 'Abd Al-'Azīz ibn Bāz, the Grand Mufti of Saudi Arabia. This can be seen from the book *Al-Dīfāʾ*, his main publication on jihad in Afghanistan.45

'Azzām did not promote himself as a scholar and none of his books or writings carried his Ph.D title from Al-Azhar University. However, his ability to craft the jihad treatise from classical sources and the testimonies he received from reputable scholars of the time were sufficient to affirm his scholarly status and make him a credible promoter, thus adding to the overall credibility of the frame. More importantly, 'Azzām called for jihad participation from the land of jihad. His migration to Pakistan with his family and resignation from a secure job to dedicate himself to jihad was seen as exemplary. 'Azzām was not like those scholars who only issued fatwa that supported jihad in Afghanistan from the safety of their respective countries.

Many other Muslims experienced occupation but not all of them would invoke jihad for mobilisation. This can be seen, for example, in the case of the PLO’s struggle against Israel and the Moro National Liberation Front’s clash against the Philippine government. 'Azzām could have used a different frame such as national independence or the right of self-determination in his call to defend Afghanistan. His use of jihad as the frame was significant. It was primarily ideological, but it had an important effect on resonance.

As a religious scholar, 'Azzām was most familiar with jihad as a concept. It was unlikely for him to invoke other secular frames for, as a hardcore Islamist, it is an abomination to base one’s action on something other than Islam. For him, if jihad was the solution, it must be declared as such without apology. To apologise was a sign of defeatism46 as jihad and its meaning have been determined by the Qur'an.47

47 See Chapter 4, section on the Definition of Jihad.
While the use of jihad in the frame was ideological, it had tremendous resonance with Muslims because of the strong link between jihad and Islam.

It has been mentioned in the first chapter that the jihad in Afghanistan occurred against the background of an Islamic resurgence all over the world.\textsuperscript{48} Azzâm himself acknowledged this when he made a comparison of Cairo in the early 1970s and the late 1970s. There was a stark increase in the congregation of mosques, more Muslim women wore the hijāb (head cover) and more youths participated in Islamic activities on campuses.\textsuperscript{49} With the increased importance of Islam among Muslims in general, jihad resonated very strongly with them.

This resonance was further enhanced with the use of Islamic discourse in explicating the situation and putting forth the argument to support the frame where, in the process, Islamic values, beliefs and symbols were inevitably weaved together. Examples of values, beliefs and symbols emphasised by Azzâm to support the frame were:

- **Values**: establishing justice for all, making sacrifices in the path of God, enjoining good (encouraging jihad in Afghanistan) and correcting evil (fighting the occupation), helping fellow Muslims in distress, having pride (by overcoming the humiliating state of Muslims) and being truthful to the faith (striving to practice the sharī'ah fully and establishing it in the society).
- **Beliefs**: sin and hell for neglecting jihad, reward and heaven for those participating in jihad.
- **Symbols**: miracles that symbolised the blessedness of jihad, martyrs that symbolised the heroic commitment to Islamic values.

Azzâm gave miracles and martyrs extra importance in his materials. This can be seen from a book in which he recorded the occurrence of miracles\textsuperscript{50} and allocated many pages

\textsuperscript{49} Azzâm, *Al-Islam Wa Mustaqbal Al-Bashariyah*, 10-2.
\textsuperscript{50} See 'Abd Allah Azzâm, *The Signs of Ar-Rahman in the Jihad of Afghanistan* (Birmingham: Maktabah, date not cited).
in his monthly *Al-Jihād* magazine to eulogise martyrs. Miracles and martyrs have always been integral aspects of Islamic faith, being important symbols and concepts held by Muslims. Stories of miracles and martyrs symbolise blessedness of jihad. If the jihad was not true, it would not have been blessed with miracles and martyrs, whose deaths were often accompanied by miracles. Both the miracles and martyrs reported by ‘Azzām played up to the Muslims’ closely held values, and the belief that God, the All-powerful created miracles as symbols of truth and righteousness.51

Thus, the use of jihad as a frame with all its consequences creates both the sense of centrality and narrative fidelity among Muslims. A frame resonates well with its targeted audience, according to Snow et al, when the views attached to it is central to the core values and beliefs of the target audience. Narrative fidelity refers to the extent to which the frame fits into the dominant culture of the target audience, its narratives, myths and basic assumptions.52

‘Azzām did not only use ideas to promote the frame. He used extensive images in print and video. In fact, it could be said that he was a pioneer in the use of battle videos and exploited the media to promote his call for jihad. Recognising the importance of the media in advocating a cause, he lamented the lack of Muslim journalists to report on the jihad in Afghanistan or promote the cause.53

‘Azzām widely distributed to the Arab world images of the destructive effects of the occupation and the sufferings of the Afghans in his *Al-Jihād* magazine. Videos of jihad operations conducted against the enemy were also widely circulated.

---

Daily news reports in print and video by the mainstream media also indirectly reinforced 'Azzām’s frame to the Muslim audiences. 'Azzām’s use of images and the mainstream media reports were powerful tools in stoking emotions for support and participation. They reinforced the resonance through experiential commensurability, when the frame is congruent with the targeted audience’s daily experience. Even though most of the foreign volunteers had not experienced foreign occupation, many of them came from tyrannical and suppressive countries. The images also reinforced the empirical credibility of the frame.

The second frame – jihad for Islamism

The second frame is more contentious compared to the first because a significant number of Muslims disagree on the diagnosis and prognosis of the Muslim issues. As observed by scholars, most Muslims are not Islamists in their religious outlook and orientation. Nevertheless, the frame is till consistent on its own terms.

If Islam is a way of life that is supreme above all other religions and ideologies, and the only one accepted by God, it follows that all human beings must either embrace it or submit to its rule. If jāhifiyah is the anathema to Islam, it will not only seek to undermine Islam but also destroy it, and life becomes a cosmic battle between Islam and jāhifiyah. Jihad is a necessity in order to respond to jāhifiyah hostility or to pre-empt it. If Islamic politics is a part of Islam as a way of life and jihad cannot be achieved without a polity, hence it becomes obligatory to establish an Islamic state or caliphate.

To give credibility to the frame, 'Azzām used various sources. The first source was the Islamic intellectual tradition which referred to verses from the Qurʾān and hadīth. 'Azzām referenced the works of Muslim scholars and thinkers, in particular, Ibn Taymiyyah and Qūṭīb. He also cited the consensus held by Muslim scholars that rulers who refused to rule by the šarīʿah has fallen into kufr.54

The second source is history. To support his view on the jähfiyah unceasing hostility against Islam, 'Azzām selected events in the history of the Prophet such as the persecution of the Muslims by the Meccan Quraysh and their war against Muslims in Medina, the Jewish antagonism to the Prophet’s propagation and their betrayal of the peaceful co-existence in Medina, and the hostility of the Christian Romans and the Magian Persians to the Prophet’s peaceful propagation. Other well-known historical events were the Crusades, the colonisation of Muslim countries, the fall of the last caliphate in Turkey, and the establishment of Israel at the expense of the Palestinians.

The third source was 'Azzām’s analysis and experiences of certain events in which he highlighted the failure of the rulers of Arab countries and their collaboration with foreign forces, thus discrediting the ideologies they subscribed to. He pointed out that the corrupt practices of the rulers have caused backwardness and moral decadence in Muslim society. They also betrayed the Palestinian cause by abandoning the struggle and forming alliances with the enemy. In this regard, 'Azzām highlighted the Western influences on the everyday lives of Muslims on the streets and provided his analysis of the history of the Israel-Palestine conflict.

As with the first frame, 'Azzām’s credibility as a Muslim scholar contributed to the credibility of this frame.

Here again the Islamic resurgence that was at its pinnacle at the time is relevant. When 'Azzām was actively promoting jihad in Afghanistan, the Islamist worldview had become one of the main trends in Muslim societies, contributing to the fidelity of 'Azzām’s

---

56. Ibid, 25, 25, 55.
57. Ibid, 53.
58. Ibid, 56.
60. Azzām, Hudm Al-Khilāfah 10-37.
63. Azzām, Dhikrayat Filistin, 4-12, 36-8.
64. Ibid.
narrative and its centrality to the general understanding of Islam and, in particular, of the Islamists. What they saw and experienced of the backwardness of Muslim society, the corrupt practices of the rulers, the prevalent influence of the western lifestyle, moral decadence and the failure of the secular ideology all amounted to experiential commensurability with the audience.

**Frame Resonance Strategy**

Snow et al. identified four strategies used by frame promoters to achieve resonance with target audiences. As this has been elaborated upon in the first chapter, the strategies are summarised here:

1. Frame bridging. This occurs when two or more frames that have an affinity, but were previously unconnected, are linked, such as the linking of Islam with politics to produce frames of political Islam.

2. Frame amplification. This involves highlighting certain issues, events, beliefs or values as being more salient than others. It is usually manifested in catch phrases such as “Islam is the solution”, for value or belief amplification.

3. Frame extension. This occurs when the frame is presented to extend beyond the social movements’ interest to areas that are presented to be important to the target audience.

4. Frame transformation. This refers to “changing old understandings and meanings and/or generating new ones” to generate support and mobilise the target through: a) transformation of domain-specific interpretive frames, and b) transformation of global interpretive frames. This is akin to radically changing the target audience’s worldview or ideology.65

*The first frame*

'Azzām used the bridging strategy in the first frame to express the legitimacy of the act of defence against foreign occupation. The legitimacy of the act is universal and can be

---

secular, but the use of the word “jihad” is a bridge between the act and Islam. By using the word “jihad”, it gave a religious connotation and made the act an obligation on Muslims.66

Looking into 'Azzam’s jihad ideas, one could deduce that he viewed:

- Islam as the only lens for Muslims to view this world and, thus, there could not be another word for the act of defence against foreign aggression other than jihad.67
- Muslims should be wary of placing their trust with non-Muslims. Non-Muslim support in a war should only be sought if Muslims are in control of the situation and could ensure that there would not be any betrayal from them.68
- One of the causes of the Muslim problem is the Muslims who abandoned jihad, in particular, and Islam, in general. The solution, therefore, was to bring Muslims back to the Islamic way of life, encompassing jihad as the pinnacle of the religion.69

Based on the above, it could be said that the bridging strategy here has been influenced by 'Azzam’s ideational position as a scholar and an Islamist. Even the choice of the audience was guided by the ideas that he believed in, rather than strategic and pragmatic consideration. Thus, the use of the word “jihad” has been consistent with his worldview and the frame’s narrative, i.e. diagnosis, prognosis and intended audience as the agent of change.

‘Azzam’s worldview and jihad ideas are limited to Muslims. The centrality of Islam to Muslim values, beliefs and cultures, especially the Afghans themselves, resonated with a significant segment. Thus, his bridging strategy was effective with the target audience.

It is important to note that the use of jihad in this frame did not originate from 'Azzam. It had been used by the leaders of Afghan groups before 'Azzam’s participation in it and

66 See Chapter 4, section on the Ruling of Jihad.
67 See Chapter 4, section on the Definition of Jihad.
68 See Chapter 4, subsection on the Participation of Infidels in Jihad.
‘Azzām’s frame was an endorsement of theirs. However, his ideational position was critical in determining the use of jihad for this frame because if the Afghan leaders’ claim of jihad had not been valid, he would not have joined the cause as he had abandoned the Palestinian armed struggle under the PLO.

‘Azzām’s amplification strategy for the frame, from the perspective of this model, was his view that jihad is fard ‘āyn for all Muslims. This allowed him to mobilise Muslims all over the world for jihad duty, and push aside conditions such as the consent of parents, creditors or the authorities and excuses such as studying and performing religious duty in the society except those which had been explicitly excused by the shari‘ah.70

In fact, he amplified the fard ‘āyn ruling by asserting that it should not revert to fard kifāyah until Afghanistan and all other lands formerly under the Islamic caliphate were reclaimed. He projected a vision of a protracted fard ‘āyn jihad.71

‘Azzām also highlighted the atheistic characteristics of communism and the Soviet Union’s ill treatment of Muslims living within its borders which amplified the frame and effect resonance. He cited the death of millions of Muslims through the genocide policy, the closure and destruction of mosques and restrictions of Islamic practices.72 He depicted the local Afghan communist regime in the same manner. The local regime’s anti-Islamic policies could be traced to King Žāhir Shāh, the last Afghan monarch who ruled the country from 1933 until 1973, whom ‘Azzām attributed to “Westernising” Afghan Muslims in his attempt to modernise the country. He cited a story that the king in one of his public addresses had stepped on a burqa’ (a traditional head dress that covered the whole body for Afghan women) signifying the end of a dark period and the beginning of an enlightened period. Muslim scholars and traditional Afghans who were strongly rooted in Islam were enraged. When Afghanistan became a republic, it soon fell under the influence of communism through communist cadres trained by the Soviet Union. Increasingly the ruling regime became hostile towards Islam through a deIslamisation.

70 See Chapter 4, section on the Ruling of Jihad and Who Can Fight for Jihad?
71 See Chapter 4, section on the Ruling of Jihad.
policy, imposition of communist ideology and lifestyles, and the persecution of Muslims. 73 There were stories of burqa'-clad Afghan women who drowned themselves in the river in order to protect their honour from the regime’s officials. 74 This, thus, became the basis for ‘Azzām’s sub-narrative to the frame that jihad in Afghanistan did not begin with the invasion of the Soviet army and would not be stopped by its withdrawal. Instead, it should continue until the rule of Islam was established. This was not only amplification on his part but also a response to the status of jihad after the withdrawal of the foreign army. By amplifying the evil nature of the enemy, ‘Azzām reinforced his justification for jihad and delegitimised the sanctity of the lives of the enemy and their propaganda.

‘Azzām also sought to amplify the noble characteristics of leaders of the Afghan groups and the Afghan people in general. Although he conceded that they were not free from flaws and weaknesses, ‘Azzām highlighted their bravery in confronting a superpower enemy, which many Muslim societies, such as in Palestine, had failed. The Afghans had been largely shielded from the influence of jāhiliyyah and maintained their traditional values such as honour and piety. Their women remained covered and committed to their traditional role as mothers and homemakers unlike women in other Muslim societies whom ‘Azzām described as being “naked” and had been seduced to leave their traditional roles for work outside their homes. The leaders of the Afghan groups were either qualified scholars like Sayyāf and Rabbānī, or individuals who had been trained by the Islamic movements (i.e. “sons of the Islamic movement”) and were fully committed to Islam and jihad. 75

Embedded in the notion of farq ‘ayn was the dire situation in Afghanistan, amplified by the images and videos that contributed to the sense of urgency in order to achieve the transformation strategy.

‘Azzām’s use of images in print and video could be regarded as his frame extension. Images and videos always captivate human attention and are more effective in conveying

73 ‘Azzām, Qiṣas Wa Ahdāt, 1-29.
74 ‘Azzām, The Defence Of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 2 & 3); ‘Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 2 & 3).

196
emotional messages such as sufferings and bravery. By using photos and videos, 'Azzām extended his frame to capture the interests of people. They also lent credibility to the frame. Thus, linking the photos and videos with the frame enhanced the resonance with the audience.76

'Azzām's frame amplification that jihad was fard 'ayn was also his frame transformation strategy. It sought to transform the Muslim's slumber and passivity to a sense of urgency. It transformed the prevalent understanding that jihad was fard kifāyah, i.e. "someone else does it and I will be excused", or was the duty of professional soldiers. As mentioned before, by ruling jihad as fard 'ayn, 'Azzām made it legitimate to not conform to the rules applied in fard kifāyah. He argued that the fard kifāyah ruling was not valid anymore because it had been the consensus of Muslim scholars that when a Muslim territory was transgressed, jihad became fard 'ayn to the people of the land and the ruling extended to other Muslims if the former are unable to effectively repulse the enemy. This was his analysis due to the asymmetric power balance between the Afghans and the Soviet army.77

'Azzām’s frame transformation strategy also sought to transform the audience from their state of passivism to activism.78 The narrative of Afghan suffering was used to justify fard 'ayn while the obligation that Muslims have to render assistance to their brethren was constantly emphasised.79

In his diagnosis, 'Azzām acknowledged that Muslims have largely lived in a long slumber, which has led to their backwardness and humiliation. This was partly related to their ignorance and neglect of jihad, and their lifestyles which were antithetical to his frame. Hence, it was necessary to transform their old understanding of jihad and lifestyles to generate their support and mobilise them.

77 'Azzām, The Defence Of Muslims' Land (Chapter 2 & 3); 'Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 2 & 3).
78 Ibid, (Chapter 2 & Final Word); 'Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 2 & 3).
79 'Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 1).
From the perspective of the model, this transformation could be regarded as a domain-specific type that is "fairly self-contained but substantial changes in the way a particular domain of life [i.e. jihad] is framed, such that a domain previously taken for granted is reframed as problematic and in need of repair." 80

'Azzām took on another transformation strategy when he began to witness schisms and the abandonment of jihad arising from differences in religious practices between local Afghans and the foreign volunteers. 'Azzaṃ called upon all foreigners to align their religious practices in accordance to the Afghan norms as long as they were still within the recognised schools of jurisprudence while they were in Afghanistan. This, according to 'Azzaṃ, was for the greater good of jihad and to avert disharmony and distrusts towards the foreigners 81 as the media were spreading the propaganda that the foreigners were there to spread Wahhabism. 82 'Azzaṃ cited fatwā to support his view that tolerating differences in ritual practices is permissible for a nobler objective:

"The Afghans are a faithful people who recognize manhood, chivalry and pride, and do not appreciate trickery or hypocrisy. When they love a person, they will give their life and soul for him, and if they dislike him they will not show it at all. A person should desist from certain actions of the prayer when he first mingles with them, in order to give himself a valuable chance of reaching their hearts so that he will be able to instruct and educate them and thus improve their worldly and religious conditions. Imam Ahmad and Ibn Taymiyyah have given verdicts to this effect." 83

The second frame

81 'Abd Allah 'Azzaṃ, "Risalah Ilā Al-Shabāb," Al-Jihād, 7 (June 1985): 28-9; 'Azzaṃ, Muqaddimah, 77; 'Azzaṃ, Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijthād, 83; 'Azzaṃ, Jihād Shāb Muslim, 7-8; 'Azzaṃ, Shahr Bayn Al-'Amāligah, 38-9; 'Azzaṃ, Silsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 3, 142-3; 'Azzaṃ, Silsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 12, 143-50; 'Abd Allah 'Azzaṃ, "Risalah Ilā Amīr Al-Mujāhidīn Al- 'Arab Fi Shakhardarah (Kābul)," Labīb Al-Ma'rakah 54 (3 June 1989).
82 'Azzaṃ, Fi Al-Sirah 'Ibrah, 44-9; 'Azzaṃ, Sa'ādat Al-Bashariyah, 56-8, 66.
83 'Azzaṃ, Join the Caravan – Conclusion.
There were three key bridging strategies found in `Azzām’s ideas: 1) bridging Islam with defensive armed struggle, 2) bridging Islam with the state, and 3) bridging the jihad in Afghanistan with the Islamic state.

The first bridging has been discussed in the earlier in the examination of the first frame, and will not be repeated here.

The idea of the Islamic state introduced in the second frame was a bridge between two domains that are not necessarily connected. Similar to the use of jihad for the defence of Afghanistan, this bridging has had the same effect in providing a religious slant to a political objective that could be framed in a secular fashion. The bridging has made possible the ruling that the establishment of the Islamic state, in particular in Afghanistan, was obligatory and thus justified the mobilisation of Muslims.

However, the third bridging was the most important of all because it linked the two frames together. Each bridge was complementary to the other. Those who were mobilised by the first frame would contribute to the second, and vice versa. In this way, more Muslims could be reached to serve both frames, even if they had not necessarily subscribed to Islamism or, the idea of the establishment of an Islamic state in Afghanistan.

There were many amplification strategies used to enhance resonance in this frame. `Azzām amplified the backwardness of Muslims and Muslim countries against the West, and the inherent hostility of non-Muslims towards Islam, and how their beliefs, values and culture contradicted with Islam and were propagated to counter Islamic teachings. He asserted that rejecting the establishment of an Islamic state was a serious negation of faith. In this regard, `Azzām’s logic dictated that since Islam could not be fully established and made supreme without a polity, the polity is then fundamental to Islam too. In this strategy, `Azzām depicted jāhilīyah as an evil force which could only be countered by Islam.\(^{84}\) At the same time, he claimed that jihad in Afghanistan had the best

\(^{84}\)See Chapter 4, section on `Azzām’s Worldview.
potential for the establishment of an Islamic state.\textsuperscript{85} 'Azzām’s characterisation of all non-Muslims as jāhiliyyah was used to dismiss any counter-frames that challenged his.

The extension strategy related to this frame was similar to the first frame – the use of images in print and videos amplified the blessed nature of jihad and the plight of the Afghan people caused by the occupying force and its local collaborators.

The transformation which 'Azzām sought to create resonance with the targeted audience was different from the transformation sought in the first frame. In this frame, 'Azzām wanted Muslims to perceive Islam as a way of life, which included politics, the concern for their individual religious piety and that of the society at large. The latter was anchored to the argument that Islam obligates Muslims to reform society through da'wah and jihad for the promotion of good and the elimination of evil. Both da’wah and jihad, according to 'Azzam, were fard ‘ayn in view of the sorry state of Muslims and the world at large.\textsuperscript{86} This transformation is fairly global in its interpretative frame, which according to the model, is a frame that seeks to radically change the worldview or ideology of the target audience.\textsuperscript{87}

**Emerging Inconsistencies**

The use of the two frames, diverse audiences and the complexity of the myriad of issues that 'Azzām tried to address resulted in some inconsistencies and tensions in his ideas.

The major inconsistency was 'Azzām’s view on the need of proper education and training (tarbiyah) in Islamic worldview, jurisprudence, ritual and ethics before taking up arms for jihad. In his mind, without proper education and training those involved could potentially create problems such as the lack of perseverance in the face of jihad, abuse of weapons (such as for the purpose of banditry), and non-compliance to the authority, and

\textsuperscript{85} 'Azzām, The Defence Of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 2).

\textsuperscript{86} See Chapter 4, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview.

\textsuperscript{87} Snow et al, “Frame Alignment Processes,” 473-4.
the laws and ethics of jihad. He discussed these issues in jihad documents on Al-Qa’idah Al-Šulbah written before and during Afghan jihad. The former outlined a brief curriculum and the latter highlighted some expected outcomes.

The above, however, does not fit with ‘Azzám’s other view that all Muslims were to join jihad in Afghanistan unless they were exempted as stated in the Qur’án. If Muslims had to be educated and trained prior to participating in jihad, some have to be exempted from jihad for a certain period of time to undergo these trainings, while others must be exempted to conduct the necessary training programs. If the logic of preparation was extended to other fields such as engineering, medicine and military that were equally important for the success of jihad campaigns, then more people could be exempted. In other words, not every Muslims were obligated to abandon their occupation in order to go to Afghanistan to bear arms. Some have to stay behind to fulfil other related tasks, in line with the original injunction of the Qur’án. ‘Azzám, however, did not provide insights on how these two contradictory positions could be reconciled.

It could be argued that the main sources for this inconsistency are his ideas and his experience in the jihad field.

‘Azzám’s Islamist worldview developed during his years with the Muslim Brothers. The Muslim Brothers emphasised systematic and structured ideological training at all levels of membership. This influence was reflected in ‘Azzám’s pre-Afghan jihad documents on the concept of Al-Qa’idah Al-Šulbah.

89See Chapter 4, section on The Ruling of Jihad.
90The Qur’án, 9:122.
On the jihad battlefield, 'Azzām encountered Muslim youths in Afghanistan who were more militant than him. Some of them belonged to or were influenced by the Egyptian Al-Jamā'ah Al-Islāmiyyah and Al-Jihād that were both more inclined to commit acts of terror in the name of jihad. From the Muslim Brothers’ perspective, this phenomenon resulted from the lack of proper religious training and guidance. 'Azzām realised that if they were not curtailed, these youth could bring detriment to themselves and jihad in Afghanistan as they had done to the Islamic movements in Egypt.

'Azzām declared a general mobilisation of Muslims for the jihad in Afghanistan during the early period of his participation, and subsequently emphasised the importance of education and training prior to involvement in jihad, as he had done in his writings during the pre-Afghan period. This was clearly stressed in the 1988 article dedicated to the concept of Al-Qā'idah Al-Šūbah which was meant to guide future jihad work.

It has been argued that this reiteration was his attempt to mitigate the effects of his general mobilisation effort which had brought Islamically untrained individuals to the jihad field, some of whom were members of the more radical groups.

It can also be concluded that this inconsistency was the effect of using two different frames in order to maximise the resonance. The general mobilisation view was always embedded in the first frame, while the stress upon education and training was embedded in the second frame.

Another inconsistency that was found in 'Azzām’s material was his praise for the likes of Khalīd Islāmbūlī, Marwān Ḥadid and Karīm Al-Andalūly while having strong views against waging jihad on Muslim rulers. Islāmbūlī was sentenced to death for his...
involvement in the assassination of Anwar Sadat, the President of Egypt. Hadid was a fellow member of the Muslim Brothers in Syria who engaged in armed rebellion against Hafiz Al-Asad’s rule and was later arrested before he died in prison. Al-Anadufly was sentenced to death for his involvement in an attempted coup in Egypt in 1974.  

The third inconsistency is ‘Azzam’s view that both the United States and the United Kingdom were Dar Al-Harb. This was not consistent with his view that the modern practice of diplomatic relations constituted a formal peaceful agreement under the shari‘ah, binding Muslim countries and their subjects. He often emphasised that Islam obligates Muslims to uphold all agreements and denounce treachery.

The reasons for the last two inconsistencies cannot be explained by an analysis of ‘Azzam’s writing. However, it highlights the complexity of ‘Azzam’s ideas as a result of his role as a scholar and activist confronted with a complex situation.

Also, these inconsistencies provide some insights into the dynamic interaction between the two frames and the interaction between the framer and its context, and that they do not exist in a vacuum. Thus, an analysis of ‘Azzam’s ideas should be done with this in mind.

**Frames and Counter-Frames**

Some of the dynamics that are always encountered in framing are counter-frames, criticism and refutation from within and without. A review of ‘Azzam’s writings clearly reveal the counter-frames and criticism that he had to face, and his attempts to answer and refute them.

---

98 See Chapter 4, subsection on The Division of Lands.
The merit of looking into 'Azzām’s frames and ideas together with their counter-frames and criticism is that they provide insights into how his frames and ideas were constructed. This allows better understanding of the content of his ideas and frame.

There were three sources of counter-frames which concerned 'Azzām: 1) the enemy he was fighting against (i.e. the Soviet Union and its local collaborators), 2) other non-Muslim entities such as Western countries and the international media, and 3) fellow Muslims.

The following paragraphs will lay down the counter-frames from these sources, 'Azzām’s responses to them and how they relate to his overall jihad ideas. Some of the counter-frames were produced by more than one source.

**Enemy**

One counter-frame produced by the local Afghan regime is found in 'Azzām’s writings. It was in the context of the regime’s invitation to leaders of jihad groups or field commanders for reconciliatory talks and peace agreements so as to discuss the possibility of a joint government in order to stop the bloodshed of fellow Muslims and Afghans. The invitation was also an attempt by the regime to frame the issue as a conflict between fellow Afghan Muslims rather than a jihad between Muslims and the apostate communist Afghans, and thus a domestic political problem rather than a jihad against foreign occupation.\(^99\) This counter-frame was prevalent in the run up to the Soviet army’s withdrawal and after it.

'Azzām responded by rejecting the offer. He argued that such reconciliations were forbidden in Islam because peace agreements are forbidden as long jihad remains as fard 'ayn.\(^100\) Using his second frame, he reiterated that the objective of the Afghan jihad was not restricted to repulsing a foreign power from the land but also to establish an Islamic

---


\(^100\) See Chapter 4, subsection on Peace Agreement & Cease Fire.
state, a vision that was also widely shared by leaders of Afghan jihad groups. The idea of a joint government was rejected because it would have compromised the principle of al-walā’ wa al-barā’ (allegiance to God and non-allegiance to kufr).  

Also, ’Azzām asserted that all Afghan communists were apostates who deserved corporal punishment and should be opposed until total victory was achieved.

Among the three sources, ’Azzām did not really deal with the enemy’s counter-frame, perhaps perceiving it as being irrelevant in challenging his frames. The lack of credibility of the enemy’s frame could be seen from the low support they received from the Afghans and other Muslims.

Non-Muslims

From ’Azzām’s materials, this category could be divided into two: international media and major powers of Western countries.

These two sources were reported to have framed Afghan jihad as a civil war between the Afghans rooted in domestic political issues rather than religion. There were also attempts to frame fight against the ruling regime as exploits for personal gain and that some were seeking to spread Wahhabism or fundamentalist Islam.

’Azzām dismissed these frames by using his amplification strategy on the evil nature of the enemy. He considered the frames as attempts by the jāhifiyah to stop the revival of Islam, prevent Muslims from supporting jihad and curtail the spirit of jihad among Muslims. He asserted that the non-Muslims were well aware of the effects of jihad on

---

102 Ibid, subsection on Legitimate Targets and Illegitimate Targets.
Muslims and the danger they would encounter if Muslims were to return to the religion. This would mean the fall of their power and cultural domination similar to the historic fall of the Roman Empire and parts of Europe following Muslim conquest.  

To support his assertion, `Azzām pointed to the fact that most international media were owned by the Jews and then constantly provided negative reports on Islam and Muslims.  

In this regard, `Azzām framed non-Muslims as inherently anti-Islam to legitimise negative attitudes and hostilities towards them by Muslims. On the other hand, his frame that leaders of Afghan groups were committed to the cause of Islam, jihad and the establishment of a true Islamic state was also his response to the international media and major powers. He would often quote the leaders in his writings and reported their organisation charters to prove their commitment.  

His response to the civil war frame from these sources was similar to his response to the local regimes' frame mentioned earlier.

Fellow Muslims

`Azzām's frames were also contested by fellow Muslims. In fact, it could be said that opposition from fellow Muslims were the most serious. `Azzām's refutation to this opposition made up a large portion of his responses to criticisms on his frames. The following paragraphs will illustrate some examples. In essence, the counter-frames challenged `Azzām's frames by questioning the legitimacy of jihad, its fard 'ayn status, and its priority above other Islamic concerns.

The salafiy scholars and their followers claimed that Afghans practiced shirk (polytheism), heresy and abominable practices such as wearing talismans, praying to

---

106 `Azzām, *Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah*, 53.
tombs and smoking. Some of them suggested that the war in Afghanistan was fundamentally a conflict between heretic Afghans and communist apostate Afghans, not between Muslims and non-Muslims, and hence not a jihad that deserved widespread Muslim support.\footnote{109}

To respond to this argument, ‘Azzām reverted to his strategy of amplifying the noble characteristics of the Afghans in general and their jihad leaders in particular. He rejected the accusation that Afghans practiced shirk and were heretical. In reality, the alleged polytheistic practices such as praying to tombs and wearing talismans were contentious issues among Muslim scholars. Although it is better not to practice them, ‘Azzām believed that they should be tolerated for the greater good of jihad for the protection of Islam. He insisted that the process of correcting the alleged practices, character flaws and weaknesses should be done gradually. Even if Afghans and their leaders’ religiosity were far from desirable, he highlighted the view held by classical scholars that the jihad obligation must be fulfilled even under corrupt leaders or commanders. He opined that the harm from the spread of communism was greater than the harm from the alleged flaws and weaknesses of the Afghans.\footnote{110} He wrote, “As long as they are Muslims, it is obligatory to fight alongside with them. The banner in Afghanistan is Islamic and the goal is the establishment of the religion on earth.”\footnote{111} He argued that those who refused to perform jihad under with unrighteous army were actually following “the practice of the Hururiyah (one of the [deviationist] sects of the Khawarij and their likes; people who adopt the way of vain and [sic.] cautiousness emanating from lack of knowledge.”\footnote{112}

He also borrowed the reformist viewpoint by arguing that even if Afghans were not Muslims or were heretics, they were the oppressed and persecuted people that Islam,
being a religion for all mankind, called upon Muslims to assist them in order to eliminate oppression and persecution.\textsuperscript{113}

\'Azzām’s general mobilisation of jihad in Afghanistan was challenged by the view that it distracted Muslim attention and support from the Palestine issue which was more important because it concerned a Muslim’s holy site, the Al-Aqṣā mosque. Instead of mobilising Muslims to Afghanistan, efforts should be channelled to Palestine.\textsuperscript{114}

\'Azzām’s response was to bridge jihad in Palestine with jihad in Afghanistan. He first asserted that Palestine remained an important issue for all Muslims. However, he viewed that Afghanistan provided better opportunity for successful jihad. There were fewer constraints to participating in jihad in Afghanistan compared to Palestine. Furthermore, the success of jihad in Afghanistan would be an important stepping stone for the liberation of Palestine because it would provide the necessary experience, manpower and spirit of jihad among Muslims. To assure them, he claimed that all Afghan leaders were committed to the liberation of Palestine upon victory in Afghanistan. He reported that all Afghans were praying that God gave them victory in their land so they can attain martyrdom in Palestine. Giving priority to the Afghan jihad was legitimate and would also eventually serve the Palestinian cause. Through such arguments, he bridged both struggles in one narrative in order to please supporters of the Palestinian cause and the Afghan cause he was championing.\textsuperscript{115}

Some Muslims viewed that the jihad in Afghanistan required funding rather than manpower from outside Afghanistan. Thus, there was no need for Muslims in other parts of the world to join the fight and there was no need to mobilise all Muslims.\textsuperscript{116} \'Azzām, however, dismissed this view. He claimed that the presence of Muslims from other places, especially the Arabs, was needed to motivate the Afghans in their struggle. In addition, Afghans loved and respected the Arabs for being the same race as the Prophet.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{113} Azzām, \textit{Fi-Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa ʿIttihād}, 90; \textit{Azzām, Jihad Shaʿb Muslim}, 7-9.
\item \textsuperscript{114} Azzām, \textit{Al-Asʿilah Wa Al-Afwiḥah}, 7.
\item \textsuperscript{115} Azzām, \textit{Silsilah Fi-Al-Turbiyah Vol. 11}, 78-80; \textit{Azzām, The Defence Of Muslims’ Land (Chapter 2)};
\item Azzām, \textit{Dhikrayat Filisṭīn}, 31-4.
\item \textsuperscript{116} Azzām, \textit{Fi-Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa ʿIttihād}, 49.
\end{itemize}
Arabs often played important roles in providing religious guidance to Afghans and becoming intermediaries when there were disputes.\(^{117}\)

'Azzām also had to respond to allegations that the Afghans were seriously factionalised and that it was best for other Muslims to stay away from their conflicts.\(^{118}\) In response, 'Azzām called for the involvement of the Arab brethren who could bring harmony among Afghan groups. He argued that there was nothing in the shari'ah that forbade jihad when groups disagreed with one another in the battlefield.\(^{119}\)

Other Muslims questioned the legitimacy of the jihad. They considered the conflict as a civil war that was nationalist in nature, and the clash of two superpowers with the Afghans as pawns rather than jihad.\(^{120}\) Hence, participation in the war would only serve the interests of the superpowers and drain Muslim resources. 'Azzām insisted that this assertion is the non-Muslims' attempt to tarnish and downplay jihad in Afghanistan.\(^{121}\)

While some reformists supported the Afghan jihad and 'Azzām's mobilisation efforts, they were inclined towards a non-violent solution. Although his extensive work on jihad was also a response to the reformist stance of a defensive jihad, 'Azzām viewed proponents of non-violent jihad for the Afghan problem with contempt, dismissing them as scholars of the establishment with a defeatist mentality. The same label was given to those who challenged his Islamist frame and tried to project the image of Islam that is moderate and non-fundamentalist.\(^{122}\)

He argued that labels such as fundamentalist, militant, radical and moderate were all created by the jāhifiyah to confuse Muslims and distract them from true Islam. 'Azzām

\(^{117}\) 'Azzām, Muqaddimah, 70; 'Azzām, Jihād Sha'b Muslim. 11; 'Azzām, Fi Al-Ta'amur Al-'Ālamiy, 12;

\(^{118}\) 'Azzām, ‘Azmah Wa Tasmīm,” 4-7.


\(^{121}\) 'Azzām, Muqaddimah, 80; 'Azzām, Silsilah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 13, 26-7; 'Azzām, Fi Al-Ta'amur Al-'Ālamiy, 6; 'Azzām, “Al-Hiqd Al-Yahudiy Al-Ṣalibiyy".
claimed the true Islam is feared and disliked by the kuffar (infidels) and that Muslims should be sceptical of moderates and progressives rather than the fundamentalists, terrorists, extremists or militants.\textsuperscript{123}

Finally, some Muslims held that the general mobilisation of all Muslims for jihad in Afghanistan on the basis of fard 'ayn was not realistic and appropriate because it would create serious vacuum of manpower for religious duties in other societies.\textsuperscript{124}

In this regard, 'Azzām wrote:

\begin{quote}
"If only Muslims would apply their Allah's command and implement the laws of their Shariah concerning the General March for just one week in Palestine, Palestine would be completely purified of Jews. Similarly, the situation in Afghanistan would not last long if only the Ummah would march forward. Moreover, there would not be an absence of Da'ī [preacher], nor would their homes be destroyed by the going out of their women. Instead, in every instance, we wait and we weep. We watch the Islamic region as it falls under the domination of the Kuffar, until it is swallowed whole, then we finally (sic) eulogise with much sighing and streaming tears."\textsuperscript{125}
\end{quote}

In another book, he rhetorically wrote:

\begin{quote}
"Some others excuse themselves by claiming that their presence in their country is necessary for the purpose of education and upbringing. For such people, we present the words of al-Zuhri:
\end{quote}

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{123} 'Azzām, \textit{Bashaʿir Al-Nasr}, 2-3; 'Azzām, \textit{Muqaddimah}, 74-5; 'Azzām, \textit{Jarīmat Qatl}, 1-2; 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah}, 22, 27.
\textsuperscript{124} 'Azzām, \textit{The Defence Of Muslims' Land} (Chapter 4); 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād}, 46; 'Azzām, \textit{Fi Al-Taʿāmur Al-Álamīy}, 12.
\textsuperscript{125} Ibid.
\end{flushright}
“Sa’id Ibn al-Musayyib went out to battle at the point where he had lost the use of one of his eyes. He was told, ‘You are an invalid,’ but he said, ‘Allah has summoned forth the light and the heavy. So if I cannot fight, I will swell the ranks and guard belongings.’”... Matters have reached a critical point, the noose is tightening, the situation is grave for the Muslims, so when will we go forth? And for how long will we sit back doing nothing?”126

`Azzām essentially believed that the harm resulting from not confronting the enemy was graver than the harm resulting from the vacuum created by those answering the call of jihad.

Conclusion

The amount of effort `Azzam put into the construction of his jihad thought, the detailed argument he researched and put forth, the amount of ideological materials he produced and the emphasis on ideological indoctrination and training, point to the importance of ideas to effect participation in the Afghan jihad and its revival among Muslims.

But this chapter has also shown that `Azzām’s ideas were not purely cognitive and theological. They were also shaped by non-ideational factors such as his targeted audiences and political opportunities.

With regard to ideational influences, `Azzām’s ideas on jihad were fundamentally shaped by his Islamist worldview which he got from his affiliation with the Muslim Brothers. He viewed the Afghan armed struggle against the Soviet invasion as jihad for self-defence, not an ethno-nationalist liberation cause. This, then, allowed him:

• to extend the jihad duty to all Muslims regardless of their nationality or ethnicity,
• to restrict his target audiences to Muslims only because, in his view, the role of non-Muslims in jihad was very limited due to their lack of trustworthiness and inherent

126 `Azzām, Join the Caravan (Part 3).
hostility towards Muslims, in addition to his belief that jihad was a perpetual war between Muslims and non-Muslims,

- to colour his mobilisation message with Islamic beliefs, values and symbols that resonated with societies whose cultures were strongly influenced by Islam, in view of the resurgence of Islamic revivalism in most Muslim societies during the period.

In his Islamist worldview, Muslims had to wage jihad in Afghanistan to repulse the occupying forces as well as contribute to the establishment of an Islamic state that would implement the sharī'ah and extend it to all occupied Muslim lands (such as Palestine and Spain). This accounts for his use of two parallel frames – jihad in Afghanistan and jihad for Islamism.

With regard to non-ideational influences, his militant jihad views were significantly influenced by events that occurred during his lifetime. These were witnessing Israel’s victory over the Arab forces in 1967, which led the capture of his birthplace and his participation in armed struggle against the Israeli occupying forces.

His ideas were also the product of political opportunities that resulted from the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan. It provided opportunities for 'Azzām to revive his jihad experience by participating in it, and taking up the role of a mobiliser and coordinator for foreign volunteers. This strengthened his jihad ideas. 'Azzām was able to build networks and gain access and allies that allowed him to propagate his jihad ideas to a global audience. Without these opportunities, it is doubtful that 'Azzām and his jihad ideas would have achieved such prominence and influence. This is also in view of a lull in jihad that spanned a decade in 'Azzām’s life, which would probably have continued had the Soviet invasion not happened.

The use of the first frame resulted from his initial unfamiliarity with the Afghans and its utility value to resonate with the larger Muslim audience.
`Azzām’s use of two parallel frames had contributed not only to the mobilisation of Muslims for jihad in Afghanistan and the spread of jihad understanding among Muslims but also the proliferation of Islamism to those who answered his call and to the Muslims at large. His jihad for Islamism frame was also tolerated by those who would not have subscribed to or would have been against such views, such as the Muslim leaders and non-Muslim elites who gave him the opportunity to tour all over the world and spread the message of jihad for the defence of Afghanistan against the leader of the communist bloc.

However, the resonance of `Azzām’s two frames was not the function of their intrinsic appeal only but because they were also hinged on a set of conditions external to them. These were: 1) their close fit with the audiences’ life experiences, and 2) centrality and fidelity to their beliefs, values and cultural symbols.

This chapter has shown how `Azzām’s frames were made credible, central and relevant by primarily hinging on Islamic values, beliefs and symbols that permeated Muslim societies. This was further reinforced by the global wave of Islamic resurgence and mounting frustration towards other worldviews that had failed many Muslim societies.

While studies of social movement recognised the role of incentive in effecting mobilisation, this, however, was not so in `Azzām’s case. `Azzām did not rely on material incentives to effect mobilisation. In fact, he considered seeking monetary rewards as an incentive for jihad forbidden. Although he saw the need for some form of remuneration to perform certain duties in jihad, he made it clear that the amount must not go beyond the basic needs of the person.\(^{127}\)

This again points to the importance of ideas in `Azzām’s mobilisation in persuading the audience. He did it by transforming his audience from pacifist to activist, from self-

\(^{127}\) `Azzām, *The Defence Of Muslims’ Land* (Chapter 4); `Azzām, *Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād*, 53-4.
centredness to altruism, and using his frames to resonate with the audiences' "cultural tool kit".  

'Azzâm’s approach is known as “motivational framing” described by Benford and Snow, as an approach where leaders succeed in mobilising people through a call to arms or normative collective action. In this context, participation is framed as “a moral duty or obligation, whether driven by “moral shock” or by deeply held values and beliefs, irrespective of the costs and benefits likely to affect those involved.”129 This explains the participation of the foreign Muslim volunteers in the Afghan jihad – a high risk venture without material incentives.

The dynamic approach in analysing the framing of ‘Azzâm’s jihad ideas has been very useful. It discloses that ‘Azzâm’s effort to mobilise Muslims had not been a smooth process. Indeed, he had to face much criticism and numerous counter-frames in the process and had to dedicate significant effort to respond. Interestingly, the greater challenges he encountered were from Muslims themselves and those who answered his call. Some were appalled by the Afghans’ religious practices and behaviours, which according to their understanding were far from Islamic and therefore did not deserve support.

‘Azzâm’s broad appeal to all Muslims brought an assortment of Muslims, some of whom posed serious challenges among themselves and with the local Afghans. Some of them were more radical. They promoted terrorism which was at odds with ‘Azzâm’s classical approach to jihad conduct. ‘Azzâm’s leadership was also challenged by those who answered his call.

All these had tremendous impact on 'Azzam's two frames. However, they would not be fully understood if serious consideration was not given to the interactive nature of ideas and their context.
CHAPTER 6

THE IMPLICATION OF 'AZZĀM'S IDEAS FOR NATIONAL SECURITY

Introduction

After analysing 'Azzām’s jihad ideas from a framing perspective, this chapter will seek to analyse the implications of these ideas on national security.

The chapter will investigate the following research questions: 1) What are the implications of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas on national security? 2) In what way could his ideas pose a security problem?

The study will analyse the impact of 'Azzām’s ideas within the context of effecting mobilisation.

Scholars on security and its related branches have acknowledged that the concept of security today can be approached from two broad perspectives – traditional and non-traditional. The former concerns the survival of the state from extermination, or the protection of its sovereignty from external powers that are set to subjugate its territory, impose their will on it or interfere in its internal affairs. Security in this context is regarded as the most important value and the most treasured national interest. The latter, however, has been best described by Emma Rothschild in What is Security?:

“The ubiquitous idea, in the new principles of the 1990s, is of security in an ‘extended’ sense. The extension takes four main forms. In the first, the concept of security is extended from the security of nations to the security of groups and individuals: it is extended downwards from nations to

\[\text{References:} \]

individuals. In the second, it is extended from the security of the nations to the security of the international systems, or of a supranational physical environment: it is extended upwards, from the nation to the biosphere. The extension, in both cases, is in the sorts of entities whose security is to be ensured. In the third operation, the concept of security is extended horizontally, or to the sorts of security that are in question. Different entities (such as individual, nations and 'systems') cannot be expected to be secure or insecure in the same way; the concept of security is extended, therefore from military to political, economic, social, environmental, or 'human' security. In the fourth operation, the political responsibility for ensuring security (or for invigilating all these 'concepts of security') is itself extended: it is diffused in all directions from national states, including upwards to international institutions, downwards to regional or local government, and sideways to nongovernmental organisations, to public opinion and the press, and to the abstract forces of nature or of the market.3

Despite the accepted use of the extended meaning of security, it must be noted that the field of strategic studies remains closely associated with the traditional meaning of security. In that respect, the concept of national security in this chapter will be largely based on the traditional perspective of security while incorporating the new generation warfare perspective, which is particularly concerned with threats emanating from non-state actors or trans-national groups and the use of asymmetric warfare tactics. All these have been elaborated at length in chapter 2 which discussed the relevance of this study to strategic studies.

The chapter will be divided into three sections. The first section identifies specific aspects of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas which have serious implications on national security. The focus here is on the content of the ideas, such as his concept and perspective on the law of jihad

which have already been elaborated on in the last two chapters. As this study is focused on security, theological, social and other implications will not be discussed. However, it should not be construed that they are any less important.

This section will highlight the negative implications of `Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices for national security. It will identify and explicate how two of his ideas could pose threats to state security. The two ideas are: 1) the duty to reclaim all past Muslim lands that are currently part of, or occupied by, non-Muslim states, and 2) the duty to wage jihād al-†alab (offensive jihad) against non-Muslim territories until they are either part of or submit to the rule of Dār Al-Islām.

The second section highlights non-ideational structural factors that accompanied `Azzām’s jihad ideas and contributed to its proliferation. They are: 1) precipitant events that provided justification for collective action frames and context for mobilisation, and 2) powerful allies that provided directly or facilitated indirectly, assistance for mobilisation. The section argues that both contributed significantly to a permissive environment for `Azzām’s jihad mobilisation. The section, then, shows the interplay between `Azzām’s jihad ideas and these factors within our understanding of the current threat from jihadist groups and the efforts to overcome it.

The third section identifies some of `Azzām’s jihad ideas, which despite their militant jihadist bent, are different from the dominant ideas held by current jihadist groups like Al-Qaeda. The section identifies these as rather “positive” implications of `Azzam’s jihad ideas and practices because they could potentially be used to counter the contemporary jihadist ideas and practices. `Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices identified under this category are his opposition to acts of rebellion against Muslim rulers and prohibition of indiscriminate attacks, attacks against enemies outside conflict zones or in non-belligerent countries, and the use of terror tactics.

`Azzām’s Ideas and Security
This section will discuss two of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas which have direct implications for national and international security.

The first, was his view that it was obligatory to reclaim all previous Muslim territories which have come under non-Muslim rule today, such as Palestine, Chad, Eretria, Chechnya, Romania, Bulgaria, Spain and Hungary. By his definition, Singapore should also be included. He considered that armed jihad was imperative (fārd ‘āyn) in order to fulfil this obligation. This would require a Muslim state, individual or organisation to instigate or wage armed jihad against the countries that rule those lands and, to a lesser degree, to subvert or cause the fall of the ruling government or its annexation by a Muslim state. Until this obligation is fulfilled, all Muslims are considered to be living in sin.

Although 'Azzām agreed that the Muslim states and their subjects are obligated to honour all international agreements, such as diplomatic agreements and the UN Charter forbidding all hostilities, he considered the obligation of waging jihad as a greater priority. Thus, Muslim states would have to nullify their agreements in the name of jihad. Until then, the process of subverting and undermining other governments politically, economically and socially was the order of the day as no one country would want to wage war against a strong enemy.

'Azzām’s view would also mean that individual Muslims could take the initiative to form a group and the group could network with similar groups across boundaries to fulfil the obligation. This facilitated the emergence of trans-national groups like Al-Qaeda which continues to subvert governments and subsequently wage jihad all over the world.

---

5 Ibid.
6 See Chapter 4, section on Other Relevant Ideas to Jihad, Status of Jihad and Ruling of Jihad in Islam.
7 See Paleri’s Threat Matrix Cube that identifies eight types of threat to national security, 1) direct-overt-internal, 2) direct-covert-internal, 3) direct-overt-external, 4) direct-covert-external, 5) indirect-overt-internal, 6) indirect-covert-internal, 7) indirect-overt-external, 8) indirect-covert-external, in Paleri, National Security, 85-9.
Although 'Azzâm’s concept of the al-amân agreement would require that Muslim subjects of non-Muslim countries abide by their citizenship contract,⁹ the idea that Muslims are obligated to wage jihad for the liberation of all previous and current Muslim lands that are occupied by non-Muslims has motivated some Muslims to undermine their own governments, as seen in the London-based Al-Muhajiroun.¹⁰ The terror plots by citizens or permanent residents in non-Muslim countries, who were inspired by Al-Qaeda’s militant jihad, are testimonies to this threat. Some of these terror groups and their plots include:

- The Singapore cell of the Indonesian Jemaah Islamiyah, which comprised of Singapore citizens, planned attacks on various Western targets in the country.¹¹
- Five individuals, who were mainly naturalised citizens of the United States, plotted attacks on the Fort Dix military base in New Jersey.¹²
- Six Yemeni-Americans popularly referred to as the “Lackawanna Six” of the Buffalo cell provided support to Al-Qaeda.¹³
- Four citizens of the United Kingdom carried out the London Underground bombing on 7 July 2005.¹⁴
- Five men, who were either citizens or permanent residents of the United Kingdom, were convicted for charges related to the plot of bombing the London Underground on 21 July 2005.¹⁵
- Four Australian citizens plotted to attack a military base in Melbourne on August 2009.¹⁶

⁹See Chapter 4, Conclusion.
¹⁶Cameron Stewart and Lauren Wilson, “Police swoop on Melbourne homes after Somali Islamist terror plot exposed,” The Australian, 4 August 2009.
These subversive activities against the interests of non-Muslim countries also posed serious national security concerns for Muslim countries when they were conducted within their territories, as seen in the bombings in Indonesia.¹⁷

Marc Sageman, in his study of various terrorism cases in Western countries, observed the shift of the threat of terror attacks from external sources to “home-grown wannabes” who were unaffiliated to jihadist groups but are aggrieved by international events such as the wars in Iraq and Afghanistan, and inspired by militant jihad ideas such as ‘Azzám’s.¹⁸

In this regard, respective governments have been understandably concerned with the ideas espoused by ‘Azzám and the existence of movements, and local and international mobilisation. The existence of groups like Al-Qaeda and the Indonesian Jemaah Islamiyah has proved that the implications for national security are not just theoretical. The non-Muslim states which used to be Muslim territory spreads over various parts of the world, and the emergence of trans-national groups or networks seeking to realise ‘Azzám’s vision implies that the security concern cannot be restricted to the local level.

Another of ‘Azzám’s ideas, which has implication for national security, was his idea of jihād al-ṭalab as discussed in chapter 4. To briefly recapitulate, ‘Azzám considered that in Islam, jihad is not only for defensive purposes. He argued that the requirement to wage jihād al-ṭalab was the final revelation on jihad, and had abrogated previous revelations on the defensive character of jihad. To ‘Azzám, the final revelation has determined that the primary basis of the relationship between Muslims and non-Muslims or between Muslim and non-Muslim states is war, and that it is necessary for Muslims to wage war until God’s religion is established and Muslims rule over all lands and people in this world.¹⁹

¹⁹See Chapter 4, section on Types of Jihad.
While this may be accomplished through non-violent jihad (i.e. peaceful propagation), 'Azzām viewed armed jihad as an inevitable outcome of the hostile characteristics of jahiliyyah. 20

Furthermore, 'Azzām considered that as long as Muslims have conveyed the message of Islam to non-Muslims sufficiently, they may declare war and wage offensive jihad against those who had refused to accept Islam or the rule of Muslims. In fact, he believed it obligatory for a Muslim ruler to launch military expeditions against these territories at least once a year. This ruling would stand, according to 'Azzām, until either the people accepted Islam or submitted to the rule of Muslims, and can only be suspended by a temporary ceasefire or peace agreement. 21

Unlike jihad al-daf (defensive jihad), this jihad duty is considered fard kifāyah (collective duty) and can only be executed by a Muslim authority. Thus, Muslim rulers were obligated to carry out this duty and Muslim subjects were obligated to remind them of the duty. If nothing was done, all Muslims would have to bear the sin. 22

For a non-Muslim ruler, having a neighbouring Muslim ruler who is seriously committed to the idea of jihad al-ṭalab, as propagated by 'Azzām, would indeed be a major concern. This concern would naturally increase when the Muslim neighbouring country becomes more powerful. 23

If 'Azzām’s idea of jihad al-ṭalab is widely accepted by Muslims and Muslim rulers, it would have ramifications on the dynamics of international politics. Muslims, either individually or in groups, may be encouraged to take on subversive actions against their non-Muslim rulers, thus undermining national security. 24 Considering the number of countries and the size of territories involved, this second idea would also have international security ramifications.

20 See Chapter 4, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview.
21 See Chapter 4, section on Ethics and Rules of Jihad.
22 See Chapter 4, section on Types of Jihad.
24 Ibid.
Not Just Ideas

The two previous chapters highlighted how ideas were important to 'Azzām’s efforts of mobilising participants for jihad against the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan. The two chapters outlined how 'Azzam placed tremendous effort on ideological work such as constructing his Islamist worldview and the two important collective action frames, criticising opposing ideologies and frames and justifying his actions from the lens of his Islamist worldview. This made up the bulk of his writing.

It is clear from these writings that his objective was not only to mobilise people to perform jihad and repel the occupying Soviet enemy and its local collaborators from Afghanistan (i.e. liberation from foreign occupation), but also to spread the Islamist worldview which he believed to be the true understanding of Islam, and to establish an Islamic state as the solution to the problems of Muslims.

The writings which 'Azzam produced were not mere narratives about the world. They covered all aspects of jihad and more importantly explicated in great detail the Islamist worldview that is supposed to underlie Muslim action; and fatwās on various theological issues from the Islamist viewpoint.

Conceptually, 'Azzām emphasised the importance of theological and ideological training before and during participation in jihad, as discussed in chapter 4 on his concept of Al-Qā'idah. He had put this into practice by organising various training camps and conducting training sessions.  

Based on the above, it could be said that 'Azzām’s approach to mobilisation was also ideological.

25 'Azzām, Qīsās Wa Ahdāth, 126-7; Some of the material used in this study as listed in the bibliography are transcripts from his lectures, classes and sermons delivered during training sessions. One example is Fi Zilāl Surat Al-Tawbah, a transcript of his lectures delivered at one of the training camps. See 'Azzām, Fi Zilāl Surat Al-Tawbah, 17, 84, 88, 93; 'Azzām, Al-As'ilah Wa Al-Ajwibah, 18-9.
It is important to note that militants and jihadists are not irrational. Despite their tendency to take extreme measures, they work with rational calculation.\textsuperscript{26} ‘Azzām was no exception. Although they were not without flaws, the content of his ideas and their constructions show tremendous rationality. ‘Azzām would not have spent so much resources and effort on ideological matters had they not been important to him. Indeed, these matters served his cause.

The importance and effect of ‘Azzām’s ideological mobilisation can be found in the testimonies of former participants of the jihad in Afghanistan, popularly known as the “Afghan alumni”. They testify that ‘Azzām’s books like \textit{The Defence Of Muslim Lands} and \textit{The Signs of Ar-Rahman} had greatly influenced their decisions to come to Afghanistan for jihad.\textsuperscript{27}

Another testimony is the proliferation of jihad groups in various parts of the world, the result of the dispersal of members of the Afghan alumni who were exposed to the ideological training during their jihad stint. This phenomenon has been noted by many scholars and is mentioned in the first chapter of this study.\textsuperscript{28}

‘Azzām’s ideological influence has been studied by the Combating Terrorism Center in the U.S. The most influential jihad thinkers and the most popular writings among the “jihadist thinking class” has been documented in the \textit{Militant Ideology Atlas}, a one-year research project based primarily on Al-Maqdisiy’s\textsuperscript{29} website, the largest online repository of jihadist materials.\textsuperscript{30}

\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{itemize}
\item\textsuperscript{26}Tore Bjorgo (ed.), \textit{Root Causes of Terrorism: Myth, Realities and Ways Forward}, (London: Routledge, 2005), 257.
\item\textsuperscript{27}‘Abd Allah Anas, \textit{Wilādat Al-Afghān Al-‘Arab: Shahāt ‘Abd Allāh Anas Bayn Mas’ūd Wa ‘Abd Allāh ‘Azzām}, (Beirut: Dar Al-Saqi, 2002), 14; Imam Samudra, \textit{Aku Melawan Teroris}, (Solo: Jazera, 2004), 41-4.
\item\textsuperscript{28}See Chapter 1, section on A Case for Case Study, subsection on The important role of the Soviet-Afghan war. Some of the groups include the GIA (Algeria), GSPC (Algeria), LIFG (Libya), Al-Qaeda, JI (Indonesia), ASG (Philippines), Hamas (Palestine) and Ibn Khattab’s group (Chechnya).
\item\textsuperscript{29}Iṣām @ Aṣīm ibn Muḥammad ibn Tāhir Al-Barqawiyy who is popularly known as Abu Muḥammad Al-Maqdisiy. He is a prominent salafiy-jihadist ideologue who is also the mentor of Abu Muṣ’ab Al-Zarqawiyy, the late emir of Al-Qaeda in Iraq. He has a dedicated website which is known as Minbar Al-Tawhid Wa Al-
\end{itemize}
\end{footnotesize}
The study highlights the following findings on 'Azzâm’s lasting influence:

- 'Azzâm was ranked sixth among the most-cited modern authors.\(^{31}\)
- 'Azzâm’s book *The Defence Of Muslim Lands* was ranked seventh among the most downloaded materials on the subject of jihad (10,792 downloads).
- Two of 'Azzâm’s other books were among the most downloaded materials on the subject of jihad.
- 'Azzâm’s book *The Signs of Ar-Rahman* was one of the top 20 most downloaded books from Al-Maqdisiy’s www.tawhed.ws site.
- Four of 'Azzâm’s books were listed among the most popular texts.\(^{32}\)

In an online compilation of jihadist materials entitled *Hāqībah Al-Mujīhid* (A Mujahid’s Bag) found in a radical forum presumably established as a recommendation for the study of jihad, 'Azzâm’s name is included in a list of more than 50 individuals with 50 of his works being among more than 2000 recommended readings (books and articles).\(^{33}\)

Also, 'Azzâm’s name has been constantly invoked as a source of inspiration and legitimacy for jihadist groups and their supporters. A website that had dedicated itself to disseminating news from various arenas of jihad and promoting and soliciting support for jihadism was named after him – azzam.com – until it was shut down after the 9/11 Jihad. The website hosts his writings and audio preachings and also serves as the largest jihadist online library. The website is located at www.tawhed.ws. See William McCants, *Militant Ideology Atlas: Executive Report*. (West Point, New York: Combating Terrorism Center, November 2006), 8-9; see also Joas Wagemakers, “The Transformation of a Radical Concept Al-Wala’ wa Al-Bara’ in the Ideology of Abu Muhammad al-Maqdisi”, *Global Salafism: Islam’s New Religious Movement*, Roel Meijer, ed., (New York: Columbia University Press, 2009), 91.


\(^{31}\)Ibid, 13


attacks.\textsuperscript{34} Similarly, his name is also used for various jihadist fighting units and operations.\textsuperscript{35}

However, from the readings of 'Azzám's writings, it must be pointed out that it was not ideas "all the way down" that had contributed to the success of his mobilisation efforts from 1983 to his assassination in 1989.

Non-ideational structural factors have important contributions to 'Azzám's mobilisation success as he himself has asserted in his writings. 'Azzám's ideological approach in mobilising thousands of Muslims for the jihad in Afghanistan and increasing awareness towards jihad and Islamism could be said to have succeeded due to opportunities such as 1) precipitant events that provided the justification for collective action frames and context for mobilisation, and 2) the powerful allies that provided direct or indirect facilitation for the mobilisation.

\textit{Precipitant event}

The role of a precipitant event as a catalyst to political violence has been widely recognised by scholars as noted in Rand’s literature review of counterterrorism from a social science perspective. It defines precipitant events as "an event or incident that helps catalyze or trigger in behavior, particularly a move toward violent action." The review noted that one of the effects of a precipitant event is to provide a window of opportunity for political action or violence.\textsuperscript{36}

The role of grievances as one of many root causes of political violence and precipitant events as factors that feed into grievances have been widely recognised in the study of political violence and terrorism.\textsuperscript{37}

Edward Newman writes, "certain conditions provide a social environment and widespread grievance that, when combined with certain precipitant factors, result in the emergence of terrorist organizations and terrorist acts."38

Finally, Johan Eriksson concludes, in the study of threat politics using framing analysis, that circumstantial factors facilitate and obstruct threat framing and thus contribute to its societal salience. One of the three factors identified was the dramatic event. Based on various studies, Eriksson writes, "It was suggested that dramatic events take on societal salience more easily than both structural conditions and actors."39

Precipitant or dramatic event here refers specifically to the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan. The gravity of the event on the Afghan Muslims provided an opportunity for 'Azzām to emerge from his state of dormancy and take on the role of a jihad mobiliser which catapulted him into prominence and gave credibility to his ideas among Muslims. As noted in the last chapter, although 'Azzām had been an Islamist and was inclined towards armed jihad after his participation in jihad against the Israeli occupation of Palestine, he had ceased all armed jihad activities after the expulsion of the Palestinian resistance movements from Jordan in the early 1970s.40 Hence if it was not for the event, 'Azzām would be unknown and would have had little impact. The prominent presence of this event in 'Azzām's collective action frames, as demonstrated in the previous chapter, also testifies to its significance as a rallying call.

The event became a major source of grievance among Muslims. It is important to note that prior to the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan, 'Azzām did not produce any work instigating armed jihad among Muslims. Thus, it could be argued that both the grievances created by the event and 'Azzām's subsequent direct involvement as a jihad mobiliser,

40See Chapter 1, section on A Case for Case Study, subsection 'Abd Allāh 'Azzām: His life and role during the Soviet-Afghan War and Chapter 4, section on 'Azzām’s Worldview and Jihad Ideas.
became the motivation for crafting the two collective action frames.\textsuperscript{41} It also provided legitimacy, credibility and appeal to ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas and frames in the eyes of Muslims at large.

The event also generated international support for the Afghan jihad cause from the United States and its allies, thus lending support to ‘Azzām’s mobilisation efforts.\textsuperscript{42} This will be elaborated upon in the subsequent section.

The relationship between ‘Azzām’s mobilisation success and the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan has also been supported by scholars’ in the field of political violence. Tore Bjorgo’s conclusion on the root causes of terrorism is instructive. He writes,

"Repression by foreign forces or occupation by colonial powers has given rise to a great many national liberation movements that have sought recourse in terrorist tactics, guerrilla warfare, and other political means. Despite their use of terrorist methods, some liberation movements enjoy considerable support and legitimacy among their own constituencies, and sometimes also from segments of international public opinion."\textsuperscript{43}

Theda Skocpol, Frances F. Piven and Richard A. Cloward\textsuperscript{44} highlight the importance of historical context on the emergence of political violence. In this case, the Soviet invasion was as much the context as the precipitant event. Piven and Cloward, in a comparative study of the French and Russian revolutions, notes, “Popular insurgency does not proceed from someone else’s rules or hopes: it has its own logic and direction. It flows from

\textsuperscript{41}See Chapter 5, sections on ‘Azzām’s Worldview and Jihad Ideas and From Worldview to Collective Action Frames.

\textsuperscript{42}See Chapter 1, section on A Case for Case Study, subsection on The important role of the Soviet-Afghan war.

\textsuperscript{43}Bjorgo (ed.), Root Causes of Terrorism, 259.

historically specific circumstances: it is a reaction against those circumstances, and it is also limited by those circumstances.\textsuperscript{45}

\textit{Powerful allies}

Many researchers on the Soviet-Afghan jihad era have highlighted the involvement of the United States and its allies in the form of financial, material and political support towards armed jihad in Afghanistan, as part of their Cold War strategy against the communist bloc. In facilitating the mobilisation and training of Muslim fighters and supplying weaponry for jihad, they contributed to the Soviet withdrawal in 1989 and the fall of its local collaborators in Kabul in 1992.\textsuperscript{46}

The assistance was done covertly under the codename of Operation Cyclone. It was estimated that between 1980–1987, the United States spent USD15–30 million to as high as USD600 million a year on the operation. Part of the money was used to supply tens of thousands of tons of weapons such as assault rifles, machine guns, mortars, rocket-propelled grenades and mines.\textsuperscript{47}

'\textit{Azzām} attempted to downplay the United States' role in the Afghan jihad by denying that any assistance reached the resistance groups, and kept emphasising that the US was the enemy of Islam which sought to extinguish the spirit of jihad from Muslims. Nonetheless, the presence of U.S. support can be inferred from his writings.\textsuperscript{48}

\textsuperscript{45}Ibid. See also Piven and Cloward, \textit{Poor People’s Movements}, xi.


\textsuperscript{48}'Azzām, \textit{Al-As’ilah Wa Al-Ajwībah}, 11.
For example, 'Azzām admitted receiving Stinger missiles (portable surface-to-air missiles) from the United States but claimed that the cost of each missile (USD70,000) was borne by the Saudi government, thus avoiding giving credit to the United States.49

This example corroborates with other research findings that there was collaboration between Saudi Arabia and the United States in funding the Afghan jihad. The denial of receiving direct assistance from the United States is not surprising. In fact, it corroborates again with the research findings that all forms of support from the United States then, were channelled through a third party, which may have been Pakistan or the Saudi intelligence agency, before they were distributed to various Afghan groups.50

In his writings, 'Azzām told stories of visits he and representatives of Maktab Al-Khidmāt made all over the United States for the purpose of rallying support for jihad, apparently encountering no interference from the authority. He confirmed the existence of an affiliate agency, Al-Kifāh Refugee Centre, that helped to raise awareness, funds and support for the jihad in Afghanistan, established by the Al-Fārūq Mosque in Brooklyn, New York. He also had an account with the Independence Savings Bank for fundraising purposes in the United States.51 All these stories confirm that the United States then, did not have a repressive policy towards the jihad mobilisation efforts within its territory.

Saudi Arabia was one of the United States’ key allies in supporting the Afghan struggle against the invasion. Scholars noted that the Saudi government’s dollar-for-dollar matching of the United States financial support amounted to millions of dollars. It also adopted a non-intervention policy on jihad mobilisation within the country and lent

---

49Ibid, 5, 11; Azzām, Fi Al-Jihād: Fiqh Wa Ijtihād, 11, 21, 35; Azzām, Fi Zilāl Sūrat Al-Tawbah, 105, 170; Azzām, Fi Al-Ta’īm Al-‘Aamiy, 40-1; Crile, Charlie Wilson’s War, 419-21, 430, 437-8; Coll, Ghost Wars, 65-6.
50Sageman, Understanding Terror Networks, 56-9; Saikal, Modern Afghanistan, 204-5; Crile, Charlie Wilson’s War, 198, 217, 341, 510; Coll, Ghost Wars, 63-8, 73-4, 81-4, 156.
support through apparatuses such as the intelligence agency and religious authority, and through semi-government organisations like the Saudi Islamic Relief Committee. 52

'Azzām was full of praise for Saudi generosity and support. He admitted that Saudi citizens made up the largest group of foreign volunteers in Afghanistan. 53 'Azzām and his associates were relatively free to tour the country and held conferences during haj (pilgrimage) seasons. 54 There was even a fatwā by the Saudi Grand Muftī 55 on the obligation of jihad in Afghanistan and of supporting it. The Saudi Arabian Red Crescent and the Jeddah-based Muslim World League were involved in providing humanitarian aid. 56 Other sources report that the Saudi Arabian national airline gave 75% discounts on airfare tickets to Pakistan to support travellers who wished to join the jihad in Afghanistan. 57

'Azzām’s tours and mobilisation efforts also faced little intervention in other gulf countries. He was full of praise for the generosity of Kuwaitis and Yemenis. 58

Pakistan was another key ally in the Afghan jihad against the Soviet invasion. Scholars noted its function as the main conduit of United States’ assistance for the Afghans through its Inter-Services Intelligence agency. In addition, Pakistan initiated training for the fighters, provided shelters and safe havens, opened borders and mobilised Pakistanis for jihad. 59

52 Ibid, 31-4; 'Azzām, Al-As’īlah Wa Al-Ajwibah, 19, 28, 43; Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 143-5, 208; Coll, Ghost Wars, 65-6, 154.
53 Ibid, 19, 38; Coll, Ghost Wars, 154, 83-4.
54 'Azzām, Defence of the Muslim Lands, Introduction; 'Azzām, Silsīlah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 11, 142.
55 Ibid; 'Azzām, Qīsas Wa Āhdāth, 174-5.
56 'Azzām, Al-As’īlah Wa Al-Ajwibah, 13; 'Azzām, Qīsas Wa Āhdāth, 29; 'Azzām, Silsīlah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 12, 21-2; Coll, Ghost Wars, 154-5.
58 Ibid, 1, 13, 38; Ibid; 'Azzām, Silsīlah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 11, 190-2; 'Azzām, Silsīlah Fi Al-Tarbiyah Vol. 12, 46; Kepel, Trail of Political Islam, 145.
59 Coll, Ghost Wars, 63-8; Sageman, Understanding Terror Networks, 56-9; Crile, Charlie Wilson’s War, 103-5, 198-9, 231.
Azzām held in high regard the President of Pakistan Ziaul Haq, and described him as a staunch supporter who was willing to sacrifice his own life for the jihad in Afghanistan. He viewed the death of Ziaul Haq in an airplane crash as a conspiracy against his support of jihad. It was also a known fact that Azzām operated all his mobilisation work from Peshawar, Pakistan and roamed the country freely until he himself was assassinated.\textsuperscript{60}

Thus, Azzām’s accounts had pointed to a significant degree of tolerance, support, facilitation (structural factors) or the lack of repressive policies by the United States and its allies towards the works done by him and his associates in disseminating his ideas. Indeed, helping the Muslim propaganda campaign against the Soviet occupation, which included mobilisation for jihad, was part of the covert operation by the US and its allies.\textsuperscript{61}

Sageman also comes to the same conclusion. He writes,

\begin{quote}
"The global salafi jihad is without doubt an indirect consequence of U.S involvement in that Afghan-Soviet war. Without the U.S support for that jihad, the Soviets would probably not have withdrawn from Afghanistan. U.S covert action supported a traditional jihad, which included foreign Muslim volunteers."\textsuperscript{62}
\end{quote}

In addition, Azzām’s mobilisation efforts were significantly supported by the local Afghans themselves. Shaykh `Abd Rab Al-Rasul Sayyāf, the leader of one of Afghan groups popularly known among the Arabs as Al-Ittihad Al-Islamiy provided guest houses for foreign volunteers and land for training camps.\textsuperscript{63}

There is much evidence to support the existence of non-ideational structural factors that contributed to the mobilisation and proliferation of Azzām’s ideas. However, the objective here is not to provide an exhaustive list. Instead it is sufficient to validate the

\textsuperscript{60}Ibid, 60-3; Azzām, \textit{Al-As 'ilah Wa Al-Afribah}, 3, 5, 32, 38, 41-2; Azzām, \textit{Fi Zīlāl Surat Al-Tawbah}, 41.
\textsuperscript{61}Ibid, 51.
\textsuperscript{62}Sageman, \textit{Understanding Terror Networks}, 56.
\textsuperscript{63}Ibid, 38; Anas, \textit{Wilādat Al-Afghān Al-'Arab}, 17-8.
role of non-ideational structural factors based on 'Azzám's own accounts that were also validated by other researchers.

Recognising that political/collective action and mobilisation does not occur in a vacuum and that they are not only affecting but also affected by context, scholars have long acknowledged the role of structural factors in constraining and facilitating movement of political action and in providing the local and international environments that are conducive (or otherwise) for successful mobilisation. 64

Specifically, many scholars of social movements have recognised the importance and the positive effects of powerful allies within political elites on the movement’s mobilisation process. Resource mobilisation, a theory within the study of social movements, states that the success of a movement’s mobilisation is critically dependant on the availability of resources and its effective use. One of the resources identified is the existence of powerful allies like the United States and nations that sponsor the movement’s mobilisation. Another theory within the study of social movements is political opportunity which holds that the success of a movement is due to the political opportunities available to it. Among the many opportunities identified by the theory is the existence of powerful allies among the political elites that enable and facilitate mobilisation. 65


Mayer N. Zald and John D. McCarthy, in a study of the effect of religious institutions on movement’s mobilisation, write:

“Resource mobilization perspectives have stressed that resources and the structures of everyday life are important to understanding social movement processes, and the behavior of religious groups in this regard offer extensive illustrations of the point. Rather than stressing the role of religious belief in such facilitation, which was common earlier, we stress how religious institutional structures may affect social movement trajectories.”

Zald and McCarthy also highlight how the civil rights movement benefited tremendously from the role played by pre-existing religious institutions such as churches and religious-based societies. This is similar to the findings in this study on the role played by pre-existing Islamic groups like the Muslim World League and religious establishments in Saudi Arabia and other Muslim countries that had significantly helped to boost the Afghan jihad mobilisation efforts.

It could be argued that the second implication here (i.e. the importance of non-ideational structural factors, specifically powerful allies in effecting jihad mobilisation in Afghanistan) is supported by the general position held by many scholars that structural factors do determine the trajectory of ideas.

It has been concluded in the last chapter that the construction of 'Azzâm’s jihad frames was not ideational “all the way down” as it was also shaped by non-ideational factors. It could also be said that the effects of 'Azzâm’s jihad ideas were also due to non-ideational


structural factors. These factors were: 1) precipitant events that created major grievances, and 2) an organised political, financial, material and military support at the international level under the sponsorship of the United States as part of its Cold War rivalry against the Soviet Union, and at the local level by various governments within their jurisdictions. The consequences of these two factors were a permissive environment to effect mobilisation for jihad in Afghanistan and the proliferation of militant jihad. Some of the consequences were, 1) the arrival of thousands of non-Afghan volunteers for jihad who were then exposed to the jihad ideas from 'Azzām and other strands of Islamism, 68 2) the propagation of Islamism and jihad ideas to the Muslim masses through public talks at mosques, organisations and conferences, and the circulation of print, audio and video materials, 3) fundraising of millions of dollars that were partially used for ideological propagation and mobilisation on a large scale.

These factors led to the exposure of thousands of Muslims to 'Azzām’s jihad ideas, encompassing the two ideas mentioned earlier which could have ramifications for the national security of certain countries and to a greater extent, international security. Some jihadists were responsible for sustaining the ideas long after 'Azzām’s death and the end of jihad in Afghanistan, and some contributed to its mutation into a more radical and permissive form of jihad. This permissive form justified armed jihad at any place, by any Muslim (children included), targeting everybody (civilians, fellow Muslims and houses of worships) and using any tactic (suicide, betrayal or robbery) as long as the intention is to achieve glory for Islam. All this on the pretext that Islam permits committing small forbidden acts for the greater good (glory for Islam).

'Azzām’s Ideas and Countering Terrorism

The third implication of 'Azzām’s ideas is perhaps the most important. It is potentially a potent counter-argument to current jihadist ideology. Unlike the previous two ideas of 'Azzām discussed in the previous section, it has a positive implication to the current security problem of jihadist ideology.

68Crile, Charlie Wilson’s War, 521.
The review of ‘Azzām’s ideological materials and his biography as discussed in chapters 1, 3 and 4 indicate that there are significant differences between ‘Azzām’s ideas and practices and the current dominant jihadist strands, as exemplified by Al-Qaeda. These differences provide a window of opportunity to refute Al-Qaeda’s ideology and discredit their practices and may be used to dissuade current militants and other Muslims from joining them or from subscribing to their ideology. If more jihadists can be persuaded to abandon their current ideology and/or practice as the Egyptian Al-Jamāmah Al-Islāmiyyah, Sayyid Imam Al-Sharīf (a former leader of the Egyptian Al-Jihād) and the Libyan Islamic Fighting Group had done, and less Muslims are attracted to the ideology, the current jihadist threat can be reduced significantly.

Based on the review in chapter 4, the differences between ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices and Al-Qaeda and its ilk can be summarised as follows:

- ‘Azzām discouraged rebellion against Muslim rulers. 69
- ‘Azzām discouraged attacks on Western countries, be they attacks on Western targets or people located there. On the basis of al-amān agreement, Muslims who have been given permission to live or enter a country have in effect entered into security agreements that forbid any act of hostilities or legal infringements. 70
- ‘Azzam was against violating Muslim lives. 71
- ‘Azzām and his foreign followers did not practice random, indiscriminate attacks that caused civilian death.
- ‘Azzām and his foreign followers did not attack the enemy’s interests outside the conflict zone.
- ‘Azzām and his foreign followers did not practice terror tactics such as hijacking, kidnapping civilians, bombing civilian places (including houses of worship) and robbery for the purpose of raising funds. 72

69 See Chapter 4, Conclusion.
70 See Chapter 4, sections on Other Relevant Ideas to Jihad, subsection on The Division of Lands, Ethics and Rules of Jihad, sub-section Peace Agreement & Cease Fire and Conclusion.
71 See Chapter 4, section on Ethics and Rules of Jihad, subsection on Illegitimate Targets.
72 See Chapter 4, Conclusion.
The last three points were based on the fact there were no records or reports of such practices during ‘Azzām’s lifetime and this corroborates with findings of other researchers as well as with the literature on the Afghan jihad written by its alumni. One of them is Abdullah Anas, an Algerian, who rejects Bin Laden’s self-declaration of war. In 2002, Anas, who was also one of the commanders of the foreign volunteers during the Afghan jihad, wrote The Birth of the Afghan Arabs in which he stressed that the Afghan jihad in the 1980s did not introduce the culture of kidnapping civilians and killing them. The mujahidin were also not enjoined to overthrow their governments upon return to their homelands. Moreover, the Russian and Afghan embassies were even left unharmed by the Afghan mujahidin.

Anas further recalled how ‘Azzām respected the lives of foreigners in Afghanistan. There was an incident in which ‘Azzām picked up three female Westerners who were waiting for a taxi to get home at a very late hour. When asked why he had given them a lift, ‘Azzām said that he did not want them to be exposed to any harm as the village they were passing through was known for its banditry.

Another Afghan veteran who has openly condemned Al-Qaeda is Nu’mān ibn ‘Uthmān, better known in the Western media as “Noman Benotman”. He attended a conference of jihadists from across the Arab world in 1996 in which Bin Laden and Ayman Al-Zawāhirīyy were galvanising support to spread their ideological virus. During the conference, ibn ‘Uthmān had argued that attacking the US would lead them nowhere. In
an open letter to Al-Zawāhirī, ibn ʿUthmān argued that the citizens of Western countries were not to be blamed or killed.\textsuperscript{78}

Finally, the review of ʿAzzām’s writings in chapter 4 also did not reveal that he harboured any views that would justify such practices.

In contrast, Bin Laden in his famous 1998 declaration of war, called upon Muslims to attack the enemy (military and civilians) wherever they could be found, a point he demonstrated in the 9/11 attacks.\textsuperscript{79} He also instigated Muslims to rebel against Muslim rulers, allegedly, the lackeys of the infidel powers as outlined in his 1998 fatwa against the Saudi government.\textsuperscript{80} The randomness of their attacks, which also sacrificed Muslim lives and extended beyond the conflict zones, has been visible in various terror incidents all over the world. In a study entitled Deadly Vanguards: A Study of al-Qaida’s Violence Against Muslims, 313 attacks have been identified as being perpetrated by Al-Qaeda from 2004–2008 in 17 different countries involving public places such as hotels and markets, and 75 percent of the casualties of these attacks were Muslims. The study compares this finding with 23 other attacks identified with Al-Qaeda from 1995 to 2003 and notes, “the trends reflected from 1995 to 2003 do not differ significantly from those in 2004 to 2008, excluding 9/11, and comparison shows that al-Qa’ida is growing more violent and less discriminate.”\textsuperscript{81} Al-Qaeda itself admitted to this fact when its spokesperson issued an apology for “the unintended Muslim victims of the mujahedeen operations” in December 2009.\textsuperscript{82}

\textsuperscript{78} The letter was published by the Jamestown Foundation in November 2007. It can be found at http://counterideology.multiply.com/journal/item/105/just_sharing_Noman_Benotman_Advice_to_Dr_Ayman_Zawahiri_Nov_2007 (accessed August 2, 2010).
\textsuperscript{80} Ibid.
\textsuperscript{81} Scott Helfstein, Nassir Abdullah and Muhammad Al-Obaidi, Deadly Vanguards: A Study of al-Qaida’s Violence Against Muslims, (West Point, New York: Occasional Paper Series, Combating Terrorism Center, December 2009), 2, 6, 9, 11.
\textsuperscript{82} Al-Qaeda offers ‘condolences’ for innocent victims,” CNN, 13 December 2009.
In addition to the reverence of 'Azzām and his ideas by the current jihadist groups, the anti-Soviet jihad of the 1980s remains the justification for their violence. Potential recruits are constantly exposed to riveting stories of past victories and miraculous incidents on the battlefield. There is a conscious attempt to give legitimacy to the struggle by drawing direct parallels with the past Afghan jihad.

The inconsistencies found in 'Azzām’s ideas identified in the previous chapter also provide opportunities to mitigate the appeal of 'Azzām’s ideas among potential recruits.

How all these implications are addressed, however, will be elaborated upon in the next chapter, which will address all the issues arising from this study.

Conclusion

'Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices have both negative and positive implications on national security. The negative implications arise from two of his ideas, 1) the duty to reclaim all past Muslim lands that are currently part (occupied) of non-Muslim states, and 2) the duty to wage jihad al-talab against non-Muslim territories until they were either part of or had submitted to the rule of Dār Al-Islām. These two ideas threaten state security because they encourage the construction of hostile intent among Muslim rulers, individuals and organisations that could lead to plans and actions to subvert or weaken non-Muslim governments politically, militarily, socially or economically until they submit to Dār Al-Islām.

However, the effect of 'Azzām’s jihad ideas was also enhanced by two important non-ideational structural factors: 1) precipitant event that provided justification for collective action frames and conducive context for mobilisation, and 2) powerful allies that directly provided or indirectly facilitated mobilisation. Both created a permissive environment for jihad mobilisation.
Although the abovementioned structural factors have been based on a specific study of 'Azzām, they have value in addressing the current security concern posed by jihadist ideology. As indicated earlier, many scholars have looked into the role of such structural factors in affecting framing and ideological mobilisation. This would mean that the two structural factors have relevance in addressing the current situation, and the battle of ideas against jihadist ideology would also require identifying other structural factors specific to the context.

The parallel between the findings here with other researches also lend support to the pre-existing view held by scholars with regards to the role of precipitant events and powerful allies in a movement’s mobilisation.

The positive implication of 'Azzam’s ideas and practices are that they may be used to discourage indiscriminate attacks, rebellions against the Muslim rulers, attacks against the enemies outside the conflict zone or in non-belligerent countries, and the use of terror tactics. His ideas in this regard and his practices during the Afghan jihad period were free from such excesses and could provide potent arguments in undermining contemporary jihadist ideas.
CHAPTER 7

`AZZĀM & BEYOND: INSIGHTS FOR CURRENT COUNTER-JIHADISM WORK

Introduction

The first two chapters of this study provided the rationale for the study and its relevance within the field of strategic studies and the current threat of jihadist terrorism, giving this study both academic and practical value.

The third chapter provided the theoretical and historical foundation to the study by offering a literature review on various jihad thoughts found among Muslims today, within which `Azzām’s jihad ideas can be located.

The fourth chapter provided in-depth descriptions of `Azzām’s jihad ideas in order to verify his classical roots and militant inclinations.

The fifth and sixth chapters analysed `Azzām’s jihad ideas. The former used framing to dissect the construction of the ideas and understand their dynamic interactions with various exogenous factors. The latter analysed the effect of the ideas on national and international security from the perspective of traditional strategic studies.

The study of `Azzām’s jihad ideas and practices in the previous chapter has also revealed the following:

- Two of `Azzām’s ideas have possible negative impacts on the national security of many non-Muslim countries and could potentially have serious repercussions on global security.
- Structural factors are also responsible for `Azzām’s popularity and the proliferation of his ideas.
• 'Azzām’s ideas and practices may in fact have the potential to counteract current jihadist ideology and mitigate its security threat.

Despite focusing on 'Azzām, this study also seeks to uncover lessons that would contribute to the existing work against jihadist groups.¹ In this regard, this final chapter will seek to address the above three findings and all other issues arising from this study with the objective of providing insights to delegitimise the current jihadist ideology and mitigate its threat to state and international security.

Issues Arising: Insights & Recommendations

Addressing 'Azzām’s ideas
The two ideas of 'Azzām identified as possible security concerns at both state and global levels are: 1) the duty to wage jihad al-tajab against non-Muslim territories until they become part of Dār Al-Islām or recognise the authority of Dār Al-Islām, and 2) the duty to reclaim all lands that were historically part of Dār Al-Islām.

These two ideas pose security concerns as they encourage hostilities toward non-Muslim states and governments. From the perspective of national security, where the stakes are high, understanding potentially threatening beliefs is important in order to preempt any hostility.

The importance of understanding beliefs in determining a leader’s course of action or as causal mechanisms in international relations and foreign policy has been recognised, especially in studies on operational codes.² Stephen G. Walker and Mark Schafer write, “beliefs as subjective representations of reality” matter in the explanation of world politics in several ways not addressed well by general international relations theories. From the cognitive theories perspective however, according to Walker and Schafer, belief

¹See Chapter 1, section on Background to the Study, subsection on The importance of counter-ideology.
can “operate as causal mechanisms independently of the realities... Instead of passively reflecting reality, they steer the decisions of leaders by shaping the leaders’ perception of reality, acting as mechanisms of cognitive and motivated bias that distort, block and recast incoming information from the environment... This role for beliefs is particularly likely when the environment is uncertain.... It is also very likely when new information does not fit with a leader’s preexisting beliefs based on old information, stereotypes, or other cognitive biases associated with threats to vested interests, or aroused by strong emotions such as fear, anger, shame or hate.”

It is important that these two ideas be addressed as they can also be found in the current strand of jihadism, especially that of Al-Qaeda’s. Thus, addressing these ideas has direct relevance and significance in countering contemporary jihadism and inoculating Muslims against it. Conceptually, this should be attempted by deconstructing, revisiting and reinterpreting classical works that had been the basis for 'Azzām’s ideas. This process should be addressed by specialists and scholars of Islamic studies specialising in the study of jihad ideas with the ability to reconstruct new jihad ideas that are true to Islamic principles, suited to the existing environment and that address the security concerns identified in this study. The resulting work would be important in countering the jihadism that is currently being propagated among Muslims both in the real world and in cyberspace.

In practice, however, the above process has already begun and is on-going. This is particularly so in reference to the idea of jihād al-ta’lab and the argument that underlies it (i.e. the abrogation of all previous revelations after the revelation of the verse in the ninth chapter of the Quran). The reformist strand of jihad has been mostly responsible in deconstructing, revisiting and reinterpreting the idea of jihād al-ta’lab found in classical works long before the emergence of the current scourge of jihadist groups. Some of the prominent figures in this strand are Muḥammad 'Abduh and Maḥmūd Shaltut, both were

---


4 See Chapter 1, section on Background to the Study, subsection on The threat of jihadist terrorism.

5 See Chapter 3, section on Reformist Viewpoint.
the Grand Shaykh of Al-Azhar, Sa'īd Ramadān Al-Būṭīy, and Yūsuf Al-Qarāḍāwīy whose work on the jurisprudence of jihad was recently published in 2009. A review on this strand has been made in chapter 3 of this study.

An interesting development is the publishing of works by former Muslim militants who have renounced their violent ideology. These militants were from the Egyptian Al-Jamā’ah Al-Islāmiyyah, Egyptian Al-Jihād and the Libyan Islamic Fighting Group. They have produced more than 25 volumes of writings in which they review their previously held violent ideologies and criticise existing jihadist groups like Al-Qaeda.6

The reformists have offered three responses on the idea of jihād al-ta’lāb. They assert that the jihad is defensive in character, and argue that there are no scriptural evidences to support the abrogation claim. They hold that verses on jihad cannot be interpreted in isolation. Instead these verses must be reconciled with other verses to produce a true understanding of jihad in Islam. In this respect, Muslim scholars have agreed that verses whose meanings are general and unconditional i.e. to wage jihad against all infidels, must be interpreted as conditional (i.e. to wage jihad against aggressors only). Jihād al-ta’lāb, to them, contradicts the Islamic principles they uphold which is that the basis of relations between Muslims and non-Muslims is peace and that difference of faith is not a justification for jihad.7

Secondly, the reformists have sought to contextualise the classical strand in two ways: 1) understand the classical view within its historical context, 2) offer a modern understanding of them by tapping on other modern fields of study. On the former, they argue that views found in classical works were shaped by the constant wars between Muslims and non-Muslims (the Romans and the Persians) and the political culture then

---

when war was the preferred means of solving conflicts between states. On the latter, some of them argue, based on the theories in the study of international relations, that the view was fundamentally a response to the prevailing anarchic international system. They offered the perspective of offensive realism, which holds that the anarchic international system provides strong incentives for states to continuously strive for maximum accumulation of power in relation to other states so as to guarantee its own hegemonic power. In doing so, states pursue expansionist policies when and where the benefits of doing so outweigh the costs. A non-hegemonic power in an anarchic international system would be constantly concerned that other states would use force on it. 8

Thirdly, the reformists stress upon the importance of understanding jihad in the light of the international conventions, which recognise self-defence as the only justification for war. It represents the reformist interpretation of what has been an ambiguous area in the works of traditional Islamic jurisprudence. Reformists argue that:

- the underlying values and principles of international law on war are similar to fiqh of jihad, which seeks to limit the destructive nature of war by imposing a code of conduct;
- the principles of Islamic jurisprudence recognise customs and conventions as secondary sources of law, and Muslim scholars are in agreement that the law should be tailored, adjusted and changed in accordance to in the context of time and place as long they do not contravene any principles of the shari'ah;
- failure to abide by international conventions will put the Muslim states, communities and Islam itself in a negative light. Muslim states also risk being sanctioned, to the detriment of the ummah. 9

In the conclusion of chapter 3, it is noted that the reformist view of jihad is the dominant strand held by mainstream Muslims, and that Muslim scholars today are making serious and continuous efforts to revisit the classical viewpoint to suit the modern context. Thus, the dissemination of the reformist perspective among Muslims could potentially undermine jihadism. Also, tapping on the cultural stock and symbols prevalent among Muslims would give it greater resonance, especially when they are voiced through individual Muslim scholars such as Al-Qaradāwī, or collectively, as exemplified by the Mardin Conference and Amman Message or via respected institutions such as the Al-Azhar University. Indeed, since the 9/11 attacks, the reformists have taken many initiatives in denouncing Al-Qaeda and jihadism. This, however, should not replace efforts to address the radicalisation of Muslim youth by jihadism given that the main structural factor, i.e. the continual "occupation" of Iraq and Afghanistan, remains.

However, the same cannot be said about the vision of reclaiming historically Muslim lands as a religious obligation. A review of various works on jihad, particularly from the reformist strand, reveals a puzzling lack of attempts to study, deconstruct or contextualise it. Muslim scholars have not responded to the militant strand's position on the issue of historical Muslim lands, neither have they attempted to reconcile the classical view on reclaiming occupied Muslim territories with the modern conception of the nation state.

---


10 The Mardin Conference was organised with the objective of revisiting the fatwā of Ibn Taymiyyah, which has been used by jihadist groups to justify indiscriminate violence, rebellions against rulers and the excommunication of fellow Muslims. The fatwā stated that it was permissible to attack the city of Mardin whose ruler and its defending army were Muslims but had submitted to rule of the Mongols who were based in Baghdad, with the objective of reestablishing Islamic authority. The fatwā permitted the sacrifice of Muslim civilians in the process as a matter of the lesser evil. The conference, attended by 15 reputable Muslim scholars from all over the world, declared that the use of this fatwā by jihadist groups has been erroneous and inappropriate in today’s context. The conference also asserted that the classification of lands into Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Harb should no longer be applicable today and that peace should be the basis of current international relations. See Introduction to the Mardin Conference and the Conference Declaration, http://www.mardin-fatwa.com/about.php (accessed August 4, 2010); Tom Heneghan, “Muslim scholars recast jihadists’ favorite fatwa,” *Reuters*, 31 March 2010.

11 The Amman Message was an initiative by King Abdullah II of Jordan and was endorsed by more than 200 Muslim scholars from all over the world, against the proliferation of jihadist fatwā in Muslim society. Declared on 9 November 2004, it emphasises the importance of the tolerance of differences, prohibition of takfīr and what constitute a legitimate fatwā for Muslims today. The Amman Message’s official website, http://www.ammanmessage.com/ (accessed August 4, 2010).
It must be noted that the modern nation-state concept was a European solution to the wars that had plagued the continent for decades. It was realised through the Treaties of Westphalia in 1648 which brought an end to the dynastic competition and conflicts between the Protestant and Catholic communities of Europe. As a result, Europe was divided into demarcated territories where the right of a prince to rule over the territory and the people living within it was recognised. This eventually led to the emergence of the modern concept of sovereign states.

Although the Muslim world had not been free from internal wars, a multilateral settlement such as the Treaties of Westphalia or their equivalent had never occurred in Muslim history. Even during the period of multiple dynasties within the Muslim world, the idea of a unitary polity was still upheld.

The state system practiced in the Muslim world today had been introduced by the European colonialists as exemplified by the 1916 Sykes-Picot Agreement between France and the United Kingdom for the control of the Middle East, and the 1824 Anglo-Dutch Treaty of 1824 for the control of the Malay Archipelago. The system did not emerge out of the Muslim’s own tradition or initiative. Even today, a majority of the Muslim scholars are hopeful that all Muslim countries be reunited under a single polity. Hence there has been little effort advanced into rethinking the configuration of the state system of the countries that had previously been part of Muslim territory.

The closest position has been that of An-Na’im within the reformist strand mentioned in chapter 3. He suggests that, in view of the current context, the idea of jihad as “the unilateral use of force by Muslims in pursuit of political objectives and outside the institutional framework of international legality and the rule of law in general” should be

---


abandoned. He seeks to fully assimilate Islamic jurisprudence of jihad into existing international law and reinterpret them through the contemporary framework of international law and the political system.\textsuperscript{14} However, this perspective only addresses the fundamentals of jihad al-talāb in order to prevent Muslims from waging wars against other states in the name of jihad. Accepting the current framework would only indirectly suggest that Muslims must forego the right to claim those lands historically under Muslim rule which are presently part of legitimate sovereign states. What has not been addressed are issues such as why militant jihad in this regard is considered wrong, why the classical view has to be reinterpreted with new perspectives, and why the current changes require new thinking. These are gaps in knowledge which should be addressed by scholars and relevant institutions in view of the current security concern arising from the ideology of jihadist groups.

\textit{Leveraging counter-jihadism from ʿAzzām’s ideas}

In reviewing ʿAzzām’s writings,\textsuperscript{15} it been has highlighted that ʿAzzām’s jihad ideas and practices were significantly different from that of Al-Qaeda and its ilk. These differences provide opportunities to refute jihadist ideology and practices and to delegitimise them.

This study has proposed that counter jihadism work should be leveraged with elements of ʿAzzām’s jihad ideas and practices which are in conflict with those of the jihadists. This can be done by highlighting the ideological differences to targeted audiences, especially, those who are in or are associated with jihadist circles.

The current jihadist groups and Al-Qaeda, in particular, have attempted to position themselves as descendants of the much-revered Afghan jihad to convince Muslims of their legitimacy. This has been observed by their use of stories of martyrs in pro-jihadist

\textsuperscript{14}An-Naʿīm, “Why should Muslims abandon Jihad?”, 785, 788.
\textsuperscript{15}See Chapter 4, Conclusion.
propaganda materials on their websites and forums\textsuperscript{16} and the prestige enjoyed by “the Afghan generation” within the Indonesian Jemaah Islamiyah.\textsuperscript{17}

As the review of `Azzâm’s jihad ideas and practices during the Afghan jihad period has revealed, the present jihadists have largely deviated from the practices of the first generation of foreign Muslim fighters in Afghanistan. Highlighting this disconnection would reveal the manipulative nature of the jihadists.\textsuperscript{18}

In line with this, garnering the support of former Afghan jihad volunteers who have renounced Al-Qaeda’s ideology and the practices becomes equally important. Examples of these figures are Sayyid Imam Al-Sharif, a former ideologue of jihadism;\textsuperscript{19} Hudhaifah, son of `Abd Allâh `Azzâm;\textsuperscript{20} `Abd Allâh Anas, the former Arab aide of Ahmad Mas‘ûd and `Azzâm’s son-in-law;\textsuperscript{21} Nu‘mân ibn `Uthmân (Noman Benotman), the former leader of the Libyan Islamic Fighting Group (LIFG);\textsuperscript{22} Nasir Abbas, the former leader of the Indonesian Jemaah Islamiyah (JI)\textsuperscript{23} and Ali Imron, a senior member of JI and co-perpetrator of the first Bali Bombing in 2002.\textsuperscript{24} These individuals are actively speaking up against Al-Qaeda. They have published many books and articles announcing their


\textsuperscript{17}“Deradicalisation” and Indonesian Prisons, International Crisis Group, Asia Report, no. 142 (19 November 2007), 14.

\textsuperscript{18}Ibid.

\textsuperscript{19}Abdul Hameed Bakier, “Imprisoned Leader of Egypt’s Islamic Jihad Challenges al-Qaeda.” Terrorism Monitor, 5, Jamestown Foundation, no. 23 (10 December 2007).


\textsuperscript{23}See Nasir Abas, Membongkar Jemaah Islamiyah: Pengakuan Mantan Anggota JI, (Jakarta: Grafindo, 2005); Nasir Abas, Melawan Pemikiran Aksi Bom Imam Samudra & Noordin M. Top, (Jakarta: Grafindo, 2007).

revisionist views on jihad and have made harsh criticisms of Al-Qaeda in the media. Some of them are directly involved in the rehabilitation and deradicalisation process of incarcerated members of jihadist groups. However, more should be done.

Currently, access to revisionist materials is limited due to the language barrier. There is an urgent need to translate them from their original language into languages such as Indonesian, English, French, Russian, Urdu, Hindi and Pashto in order to reach out to the Muslim masses and jihadist communities. It must be noted that one of the key contributors to the spread of jihadism has been the accessibility to jihadist writings through the Internet, and the jihadist dedication to the translation of these writings to the languages of their target audience, especially English and Bahasa Indonesia.

The review of 'Azzām's jihad ideas in chapter 5 has revealed that most of his responses to criticism were directed to Muslims of the salafiy movement. His preoccupation with the salafiy had been driven by his concern that their incessant censure of Afghan religious practices would affect Muslim support for the cause.

In a study of jihadist criticism of non-jihadist salafiy, Brynjar Lia, acknowledges 'Azzām’s difficulties by writing:

"There were significant differences in religious observances and practices between the Arab volunteers, many of whom were observant Salafis, and the Afghan resistance, who by and large observed the Hanafi school and were tolerant of Sufi shrines and other practices that Salafis regarded as godless 'innovatism' in Islam. This had been a problem during the first Arab-Afghan experience from the mid-1980s to c. 1992, and no less so during the ‘second round’ following the Taliban’s seizure of power in 1996 until its downfall in late 2001."25

---

A similar trend has also been found among current jihadists. Al-Zawahiri has had to dedicate extensive efforts in responding to Al-Sharif’s revisionist views and harsh criticisms against him and Al-Qaeda by publishing a book of more than 200 pages. His letter to Al-Zarqawi indicates his sensitivity to the Muslim criticism of attacks made on Shiites, posting videos of beheadings and indiscriminate bombings. Brynjar Lia also notes Abu Musab Al-Suri’s preoccupation with salafiy’s criticism of jihadists, and his view that non-jihadist salafiy is the major stumbling block for jihadist objectives. Imam Samudra, the leader of the 2002 Bali Bombing and a member of the Indonesian JI, also criticised the salafiy movement in his published and unpublished works.

The effect of these ideological challenges posed by various segments of Muslims has been studied and will be elaborated upon in the following section.

‘Azzam’s jihad ideas and practices, in particular, and criticism by former “brothers-in-arms” and co-religionists of various strands, in general, carry significant value in discrediting and delegitimising jihadism among Muslims and those already within jihadist circles.

In chapter 5, a major inconsistency in ‘Azzam’s ideas was highlighted. Specifically, it is the tension between the immediate need for all capable Muslims to join the jihad in Afghanistan regardless of their occupation, and the need for proper training in Islamic worldview, jurisprudence, rituals and ethics before joining jihad. The lack of such training could potentially lead to individuals that behave in ways that are

---

28 Lia, “‘Destructive Doctrinarians’ Critique,” 281-9, 294-8.
counterproductive to jihad, such as carrying out banditry and other violations of the shari‘ah.\(^{30}\)

Inconsistencies such as the above should be pointed out as evidence that 'Azzām's ideas are not divine imperatives. Rather, they were his personal interpretation of scriptural texts in response to the context that he was in. Being a product of human intellectual endeavour, the ideas should not be treated as definitive solutions, and thus should not be viewed as infallible.

The suggestion to capitalise on some of 'Azzām's ideas in order to counter contemporary jihadism should not be construed as an attempt to completely absolve him of militancy. Despite its militant bent, 'Azzām's jihad ideas have the utility of being used to mitigate the appeal of current jihadism among Muslims and jihadists.\(^{31}\)

*Not just ideas but also epistemology*

'Azzām was an adherent of salafism. Similarly, Al-Qaeda and most jihadist groups today subscribe to a particularly narrow subset of salafism. Their approach to jihad could be described as the classical methodology of ijtihād or deduction from the Qur‘ān and the hadith (Prophet's tradition) based primarily on three important sciences known as Uṣūl Al-Fiqh,\(^{32}\) Uṣūl Al-Tafsīr\(^{33}\) and Uṣūl Al-Ḥadīth\(^{34}\), and an exhaustive study of classical texts to investigate their stand on pertinent issues. What differentiates them from other

---

\(^{30}\)See Chapter 5, section on Inconsistency.

\(^{31}\)See Chapter 4, Conclusion.


\(^{34}\)Also known as *Mustalah Al-Hadīth*. It is the science in the study of hadith. Its objective is to determine the authenticity of a hadith and how rulings can be deduced from it. See Muhammad ‘Ajjāj Al-Khatīb, *Uṣūl Al-Hadīth ‘Ulumuh Wa Mustalahuh* (Bayrūt: Dār Al-Fikr, 1989), 7-13; Esposito (ed.), *The Oxford Encyclopedia of Modern Islamic World*, 84.
schools of Islam are: 1) the belief in the supremacy of the scriptural texts over rational thinking, 2) the belief in the supremacy of the literal meanings of the scriptures above other ways of interpretation, 3) the belief that the best approach in understanding the scriptures is through the lens of the best generations of Islam (i.e. the Companions and those who follow their way), 4) deference to classical works which adhere to salafism without any attempts at reinterpretation, 5) contempt towards those whom they perceive as non-salafiy such as the šüfiy and rationalists (those who base their ideas on Western philosophy and epistemology). 'Azzām himself was noted to have disagreed with the šüfiy and reformist on matters related to jihad.

Thus, it could be argued that not only is it important to understand the actual jihad ideas of 'Azzām and the current jihadism but also the epistemology from which these ideas were constructed. It should be recognised that anything that is not from the salafiy would not be effective when challenging or engaging with the jihadists and their circles. Based on this, the following points become important in confronting jihadists at an ideological level: 1) jihadists belong to a distinct segment of Muslims, 2) any ideological challenge that targets jihadists and their circle is best constructed with their salafiy approach to religious issues in mind, 3) criticisms from fellow salafiy poses more serious challenges to jihadists.

**Promoting debates among jihadists and between jihadists and others**

Thus far, the following has been suggested to counter jihadism:

- Using the reformist jihad viewpoint to counter jihadism among the Muslim masses
- Using some of 'Azzām's jihad ideas and practices against members of the jihadist circles
- Using former militants' revisionist views against those of the jihadist circles
- Using salafiy critique and epistemology for the construction of theological refutation of jihadism against those of the jihadist circles.

In mitigating the threat of jihadism, the above suggestions should also promote debate among jihadists, and between them and others. This would bring about significant benefit. One is the creation of a marketplace of ideas within jihadist circles. This, would, to some degree, distract jihadist resources and cause division among them.

In Omar Ashour's study on the deradicalisation of jihadist groups involving the Egyptian Muslim Brothers, Al-Jihād, Al-Jamā’ah Al-Islamiyah, the Algerian Armed Islamic Group, Islamic Salvation Army and Salafi Group for Preaching and Combat, he concludes that social interaction is one of four important variables in disengaging Muslim militant groups from violence to participating in previously denounced civil activities. He describes two dimensions of interaction. One is external interaction which occurs between jihadist and "any social actor or entity who/which does not belong to the same ideological camp". The other is internal interaction that takes place "between the leadership, the mid-ranking commanders and the grassroots" of jihadist groups.36

After studying the groups, Ashour concludes that social interactions that facilitate exchanges of ideas with non-jihadists in combination with the other variables37 will effect the transformation of jihadists’ ideology, albeit to different degrees. The interaction affects both the followers and leaders. For the former, the effect is limited because it may not necessarily bring about the deradicalisation of the group. However, it still contributes to reducing the number of the group’s members and creating factions among them. For the latter, he writes,

"Deradicalization efforts are much likely to become successful when they originate from within the organization. Thus, internal interaction between a leadership supportive of deradicalization and its followers is crucial, especially for containing opposition to the process. For example in the IG’s [Egyptian Al-Jemaah Al-Islamiyah]... many of the followers did not support the process except after meeting with their “historical


37 The other variables identified by Ashour are, 1) state repression, 2) selective inducement, 3) charismatic militant leadership. See Ashour, *De-radicalization of Jihadists*, 14-6, 137-41.
leadership” and intensely debating the “theological legitimacy” as well as the costs and benefits of deradicalization.\textsuperscript{38}

According to Ashour, the subsequent interactions between the leadership of the deradicalised Al-Jamā‘ah Al-Islamīyah with other leaders had resulted in the deradicalisation of the Egyptian Al-Jihād and the Libyan Islamic Fighting Group.

This is where all governments, Muslim and non-Muslim, can play their part to promote and facilitate debate and contribute to the creation of a marketplace of ideas. The marketplace of ideas on the issue of jihad would challenge the worldview of jihadism and its underlying Islamism. This would also generate the culture of critical thinking, promote the reevaluation of old ideas and deglamourise jihadist groups like Al-Qaeda.\textsuperscript{39}

Heather S. Gregg reports that in Saudi Arabia, through the Al-Sakīnah program, the very act of drawing extremists into dialogue and debating their ideas with religious scholars and former jihadists has opened the opportunity for alternative viewpoints and promoted a “middle way” between extremism and secularism.\textsuperscript{40}

\textit{Multi-disciplinary approach to the study of jihad}

The previous section has reiterated the need to support and strengthen the reformist jihad ideas so as to inoculate Muslims against jihadism. There is also a need for reformist scholars to respond to ‘Azzam’s fatwa that jihad is fard ‘ayn until all historically Muslim territories have been reclaimed.

\textsuperscript{38}Ashour, \textit{De-radicalization of Jihadists}, 140.


\textsuperscript{40}Ibid, 310. See the Al-Sakīnah program’s official website, \url{http://en.assakina.com/} (accessed August 4, 2010).
In view of these two points, it is thus important to promote a multi-disciplinary approach to the study of jihad at traditional Muslim institutes of learning such as madrasah\textsuperscript{41} and pesantren\textsuperscript{42} as well as at universities.

Currently, this process has only been observed at Western universities within the study of Islam or related disciplines such as international relations. Most traditional Muslim institutions of learning still rely heavily, or solely, on classical works. Even the reformist texts used in comparison with the classical works are largely rooted in traditional Islamic jurisprudence. There is little comparison with modern international law, far from being integrated to it. The study of other disciplines such as international relations in order to understand different perspectives is rare.

These initiatives must be taken by Muslims themselves so as to avoid the perception of colonialism by Western intellectuals. However, non-Muslims can play a part by objectively engaging Muslim leaders and scholars.

In addition, a few other suggestions can be made;

- to produce more Muslim scholars of traditional backgrounds specialising in jihad from a multi-disciplinary perspective by offering scholarships;
- to encourage research that seeks to integrate traditional jihad studies with international law, and a multi-disciplinary approach to the study of jihad in Muslim institutions of learning;
- to encourage platforms for Muslim scholars of various backgrounds to revisit the view of traditional jihad with the purpose of adapting it to modern contexts. An example is the Mardin Conference of 2010 which brought together 15 scholars to review Ibn Taymiyah’s fatwā, thereby producing a resolution to abandon the categorisation of lands into Dār Al-Islām and Dār Al-Ḥarb, and accept peace as the basis of relations between Muslim and non-Muslims.

\textsuperscript{41}Madrasah is an Arabic word which originally means school. However, it is widely used by non-Arab Muslims for school that is dedicated for the study of Islam and its related disciplines.

\textsuperscript{42}Pesantren also means an Islamic school similar to madrasah. However, it is popularly used in Indonesia.
With the existence of more human capital (multi-disciplinary specialists on jihad), efforts to reach out to Muslims and Muslim students, reformulate the fiqh al-jihād (jurisprudence of jihad) curriculum studied at traditional Islamic learning institutions, revisit the traditional interpretations of jihad and encourage debate on this topic among Muslims may all be facilitated more effectively.

Addressing non-ideational structural factors

Addressing ‘Azzām’s two ideas as discussed above is important due to their security ramifications and the effects they may have in radicalising individuals. But, as noted also in the previous chapter, the ideas were not solely responsible in effecting mobilisation and the proliferation of ‘Azzām’s militant jihad. There were also non-ideational structural factors involved as verified by many other studies. Hence, efforts to address threats arising from jihadist ideology should also address the structural factors that contribute to the appeal and spread of these ideas.

The previous chapter has identified the two structural factors as: 1) the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979 which provided justification for ‘Azzām’s jihad mobilisation, and 2) powerful allies in the form of political elites, major powers and existing religious institutions that had provided assistance to ‘Azzām’s jihad mobilisation efforts, directly or indirectly.

The first factor is consistent with findings by various studies on political violence while the second factor is supported by the resource mobilisation and political opportunity theories within the study of social movements.

The first factor also has direct relevance in addressing the threat of jihadism and its proliferation today. Studies of the process of radicalisation have highlighted the significance of the war in Iraq and, to a lesser extent, Afghanistan in radicalising Muslim youths to join the jihad effort and plot attacks against foreign military powers in both countries. Farhad Khosrokhavar in his book Inside Jihadism also comes to the same
conclusion after analysing the spread of jihadism among Muslims in the West. Sageman suggests that the removal of the American forces in Iraq, among other initiatives, is “absolutely essential if the United States wants to counter al Qaeda propaganda” and to extinguish “the sense of moral outrage” among Muslims. The same suggestion is also found in the National Intelligence Estimate report *Trends in Global Terrorism: Implications for the United States.*

In 2006, the Pew Global Attitudes project surveyed Muslim perceptions of and attitudes to the image of the United States and its policies. Comparing with its first survey data in 2002, the project reported:

- Since the inception, “our surveys have documented the rise of anti-Americanism around the world, and especially in predominantly Muslim countries.” Seven out of eight people surveyed viewed the United States unfavourably.
- “Anti-Americanism is largely driven by aversion to United States policies such as the war in Iraq, the war on terrorism, and the United States support for Israel.” [emphasis mine]
- “Anti-Americanism worsened in the Mideast in response to the war in Iraq – but it soared among Muslims in other parts of the world that previously did not view the United States poorly – notably in Indonesia and Nigeria.”

Similarly, the January 2009 Gallup reported that Muslims in the Middle East and North Africa felt that the US withdrawal from Iraq would improve Muslim perception and address their grievances toward the United States.

---

War creates grievances worldwide, similar to those seen during the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan, and it also creates the opportunity for jihad mobilisation and the development of decentralised jihad operations outside conflict zones. When Muslim grievances meet with jihadist worldviews and frames, radicalisation and opportunities for jihad mobilisation is facilitated again. Khosrokhavar writes, “it is clear from a review of extremist material and interviews that militants are seeking to appeal to young American and European Muslims by playing on their anger over the war in Iraq and the image of Islam under attack.” Based on the study, he argues that the withdrawal of foreign military forces from Muslim countries will have a direct impact in mitigating the current threat of jihadists. A quick resolution to the wars, while ensuring the stability of countries involved is imperative to avoid security problems at local, regional and international levels.

Until then, efforts must be made to offer an alternative narrative to the current quagmire. The experience in Iraq has proven that critical segments of Iraqis could be won over against Al-Qaeda. The Awakening Movement, which comprises of local tribal leaders and insurgent groups, have been persuaded that Al-Qaeda is the enemy of Iraqis and that there is greater good in collaborating with the foreign military forces.

The United States had successfully rallied the international community against jihadist terrorism after the 9/11 attacks. Various laws, regimes and conventions have been established at international and state level. The result is that contemporary jihadists are not experiencing the same structural support they enjoyed during the Soviet-Afghan war.

---


51 *Counter-Terrorism Legislation and Practice: A Survey of Selected Countries*, Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs of the United Kingdom (Oct. 2005); Sinapan Samydorai, “9/11 Anti-Terrorist
However, the regimes put in place do not make the second structural factor – powerful allies – totally irrelevant. Limited but significant allies still exist, allowing the perpetuation of jihadist threat.

In the war in Iraq, the structural factor exists in the form of neighbouring states with vested interests in opposing the United States. They provide direct or indirect support to jihadist groups operating there. Direct support may take the form of the provision of training, finance, materials, safe havens and volunteers for jihadist groups, while indirect support may be in the form of interference in the internal affairs of Iraq in order to effect instability and creating permissive environments for jihadist groups to operate. One important state, in this regard, is Iran as observed by many researchers. As for Afghanistan, these structures are in the form of elements within the Pakistani government and military, tribal societies bordering Afghanistan and radical religious institutions.

Perceiving itself being encircled by the United States from Iraq and Afghanistan located at its western and eastern borders respectively, Iran has been providing support, directly and indirectly, to insurgents and jihadist groups operating in both countries so as to inflict harm on the United States and its allies. Its geo-strategic ambition to be a major power in the region also means that it would seek to be actively involved in both countries with the intent of shaping its future in alignment with its ambition. Admittedly, Shiite Iran has no love for Sunni jihadist groups in Iraq and Afghanistan; notwithstanding this, its pragmatism, as exemplified by its support of Hamas and its meddling in the affairs of

---


52 Frederic Wehrey et al, The Iraq Effect: The Middle East After the Iraq War (Summary), (Santa Monica: Rand Corporation, 2010), xii-xiv.

both countries with the aim of undermining the coalition forces, does contribute to a permissive environment for jihadist groups to sustain their struggle and survive.\textsuperscript{54}

Addressing the issue of Iran's and, to a lesser extent, Pakistan's support for jihadist groups is beyond the scope of this study as it would necessitate a strategic, domestic and foreign relations analysis. Nonetheless a comprehensive policy in addressing the above two problems and other possibly similar structural factors is imperative to the mitigation of the threat of jihadism.

In conclusion, prolonged war in Iraq and Afghanistan, and the continued existence of structural factors will limit the effect of any attempt to counter and delegitimise jihadist ideology. Counter-ideology, despite its importance and centrality in counter-terrorism strategy, is not and cannot be the silver bullet against jihadism. Its success and effectiveness are dependent on other aspects of counter-terrorism.

Conclusion

Six important points can be derived from this chapter. Firstly, the importance placed by 'Azzām on ideology for jihad mobilisation is shared by current jihadist groups and confirmed through the works of former jihadists. All of them expended significant effort and resources on ideological work. Based on this and many other studies on the role of ideology in radicalising individuals, it is thus prudent to incorporate counter-ideology as a central component to counter-terrorism. However, the role of structural factors highlighted in the previous chapter and addressed in this chapter suggests that countering the ideology, while important and central in counter-terrorism, is not sufficient to mitigate the threat of jihadism.

There may be other factors involved, but it is not within the scope of this study to identify all of them. It is sufficient to conclude here that it remains critical for counter-terrorism

\textsuperscript{54}Rabasa et al, \textit{The Muslim World after 9/11}, 130.
work to adopt a multi-dimensional or multi-faceted approach that would address the ideational and non-ideational structural factors. \(^{55}\)

Secondly, counter-terrorism work must adopt a differentiated approach in countering jihadism. It must target specific jihadist ideas that have direct impact on security so as to set priorities and allocate resources. This study has identified two of 'Azzam's ideas, i.e. the duty to wage jihad al-talab against non-Muslim territories until they become part of Dar Al-Islam or recognise the authority of Dar Al-Islam, and the duty to reclaim all territories that were historically part of Dar Al-Islam. These ideas have to be addressed and the inherent inconsistencies in 'Azzam's ideas should be exploited to mitigate their appeal.

Counter-terrorism work must also differentiate between ordinary Muslims and radicals, and between the non-violent and violent radicals. Again, this differentiation will help in prioritisation and focus. More importantly, engaging former militants with salafiy leanings to critique jihadism as suggested by this study can only be achieved if the differences are recognised and a differentiated approach is adopted. Indeed, this was 'Azzam's approach to jihad mobilisation as seen from the use of two different frames.

Thirdly, is the recognition that Muslims of different backgrounds must work together in countering jihadism. They include scholars of different orientations (i.e. reformist, traditionalist, sufiiy and non-violent radical, Islamist and salafiy), community leaders that could reach out to various segments of the community and disseminate the message. There is also a need to involve institutions of higher learning and Muslim institutions for research work and to rethink traditional jihad ideas. Instead of looking at the moderate-extremist dichotomy, a better consideration is between those who are pro-violence and those who are against violence, even if the latter involves some radical individuals.

This does not necessarily mean that the problem of radicals should be overlooked. However, a prudent policy must differentiate “radicalisation that leads to violence and radicalisation that does not; they should be dealt with distinctly and accordingly”. The latter should be tackled as social or political problems, “not as a ‘subset’ of the al-Qaeda threat.”

Fourthly, understanding epistemology is as important as understanding the intricacies of ideas for effective counter argument. Based on the above third and fourth point, counter-arguments from different approaches (i.e. salafiy, reformist and traditionalist), to religious issues must be developed to suit different target audiences.

Fifthly, alternatives must be promoted to create a marketplace of ideas that would promote challenges to jihadism.

Sixthly, based on the potential of a marketplace of ideas in challenging jihadism, and the effect of interactions between jihadists and non-jihadists on deradicalisation and disengagement as pointed out by this study, it is then concluded that the principal approach to countering jihadism is not through the policy of repression of expression but through a liberal attitude to dissent, disagreement and contestation. A study on radicalisation entitled The Edge of Violence: A Radical Approach to Extremism reports;

“... the best way to fight radical ideas is with a liberal attitude to dissent, radicalism and disagreement. This can de-mystify and de-glamourise terrorism without alienating large numbers of people. However – a liberal approach depends on independent voices setting out forceful counter-arguments against extremist ideas... silencing radical views must be considered as a last option because banning radical voices will neither prove effective nor lessen their appeal in the long term. Instead, government and non-government agencies – including Muslims – must set

---

56 Bartlett, Birdwell and King, Edge of Violence, 38.
out counter arguments as to why particular radical or extremist ideas are wrong.”

A realistic approach to extremism is to ensure it remains on the fringes of society, and not to totally eliminate it. Repressive policies would only force these ideas underground and compound the problem.

This study is not only beneficial in understanding and addressing the problem of ‘Azzām’s militant jihad ideas but also the problems of contemporary jihadism today.

The use of Snow et al.’s framing model and the broader social movement lens have been very useful in understanding the construction of ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas through its dynamic relations with factors exogenous to his cognitive domain. They have contributed to a more contextual and nuanced understanding of ‘Azzām and the key conclusion that can be made here is that ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas were not the product of a pure academic endeavour or a work of theology alone, but had sought to interpret the scripture in order to inform his audiences on jihad in Islam.

Based on Peters’ review of jihad works in Islam, ‘Azzām’s jihad ideas fall under the mobilising genre, similar to Ibn Taymiyah’s work on jihad, which had sought to mobilise Muslims against the Mongols. Works of this genre had served the purpose of mobilising Muslims for armed jihad in response to specific well-defined political situations. It is different from other known genres such as: 1) instructional genre, which is characteristically academic, written with the primary objective of providing religious guidance and rulings on jihad for Muslims; 2) reformist genre that seeks to reconcile jihad with international law or compare jihad with the just-war theory or refute the idea that Islam was spread by the sword; and 3) combination of mobilising and instructional genres published to jolt Muslims from their slumber but not necessarily in response to any specific political situation.

57 Ibid, 37, 39.
Although a mobilising genre may not be necessarily wrong in its content, its identification helps in putting the jihad ideas in its proper perspective. In addition to the fact that it is a product of human intellectual endeavour, which is not infallible, correct genre identification restricts universality. Identifying and highlighting this fact to the public will inform them not only about the accurate understanding of the idea but also the limit of its applicability across time and space. From a counter-ideology perspective, this would help in responding to any misunderstanding or misapplication of jihad among Muslims.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

'ABD ALLĀH 'AZZĀM'S MATERIALS (PRIMARY SOURCES)

Books & Articles (Published)


269


1987. “‘Azīmah Wa Taṣmīm (Determination and Resoluteness)”. Al-Jihad. No. 34. September.


1988. “Khayr Al-A’māl Adwamuhā Wa In Qalla (Best Deeds Are Those That Are Consistent, Even If They Are a Few)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 17. 17 September.


1988. “Infarata ‘Aqduhum (Their Pact Has Disintegrated)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 23. 29 October


1988. “Qānūn Thābit (The Immutable Rule)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 28. 3 December.

1988. “Alaysa Al-‘Subh Bi Qarīb (The Morning is Near)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 29. 10 December.


1989. “Ilḥaq Bi Al-Qāfīlah (Join the Caravan)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 33. 7 January.


1989. “Ma Zanantum An Yakhrujū (Never Thought, They Will Leave)”. *Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle)*. No. 35. 21 January.


1989. "Shahr Al-Shuhādāʾ (Month of Martyrs)". Lāhib Al-Maʿrakah (Flames of Battle). No. 44. 25 March.

1989. "Yawm Al-Aqṣā (Al-Aqsa Day)". Lāhib Al-Maʿrakah (Flames of Battle). No. 45. 1 April.

1989. "Al-Ḥarb Al-Aḥfiyyāh (Civil War)". Lāhib Al-Maʿrakah (Flames of Battle). No. 46. 8 April.


1989. “Al-Mu'adalat Al-'a'bah (Difficult Equations)”. Lahīb Al-Ma'rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 52. 20 May.


1989. “Ḥarb Al-Afūn (Opium War)”. Lahīb Al-Ma'rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 54. 3 June.

1989. “Risālāt Ilā Amīr Al-Mujāhidīn Al-'Arab Fī Shakardarah (Kabul) (Letter to Commander of Arab Mujahidin in Shakardarah)”. Lahīb Al-Ma'rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 54. 3 June.

1989. “Lā Nukūl 'An Al-Tariq (We Will Not Run From the Path)”. Lahīb Al-Ma'rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 55. 10 June.


1989. “Da’ā’ī Al-Jihād Inqadh Li Al-Bashārīyah (Support for Jihad is a Salvation to Humanity)”. Lahiḥ Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 58. 1 July.


1989. “Min Jārīkār Ilā Jalabhar (From Charikar to Jalabhar)”. Lahiḥ Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 63. 5 August.

1989. “Ḥarb Al-Shaʕāt (Propaganda War)”. Lahiḥ Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 64. 12 August.


1989. “Ṣabr Jamīl (Beautiful Patience)”. Lahiḥ Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 67. 2 September.


1989. “Bi’samā Jazaytam Al-‘Aḍbā’ (The worst reward for a camel that saved your life is slaughter)”. Lahiḥ Al-Ma’rakah. No. 70. 23 September.


1989. “Fi Al-Sirah Al-‘Ibrah (Lesson From the History of the Prophet)”. Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 73. 14 October.

1989. “Lam Uṣib Bi Mithlik Qat (I Have Never Been in an Ordeal Like You)”. Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 74. 12 October.

1989. “Fārāḍ Mansīyah (Forgotten Duties)”. Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 75. 28 October.

1989. “Hasbūnā Allāh, Wa Ni’ma Al-Wakīl (“God is Enough For Us; and How Excellent a Guardian is He!”)”. Al-Jihād. No. 61. November.

1989. “Ya Aqā‘ām Al-Sabr Iḥmālī (O Feet of Patience, Persevere)”. Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 77. 11 November.

1989. “‘Ama‘īyat Al-Shaykh Tamīm Al-‘Adnānīy (Shaykh Tamīm Al-‘Adnānīy Operation)”. Lahīb Al-Ma’rakah (Flames of Battle). No. 78. 18 November.


275


Internet sources


Al-Qaumīyah (Nationalism). No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?%3Da=a82qriko (2 August 2010)


Fī Khāṣṣ Al-Ma'rakah (In the Midst of Battle). No place: Maktab Khidmat Al-Mujahidīn. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?%3Da=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

Fī Zilāl Sūrah Al-Tawbah (Under the Shades of Al-Tawbah Chapter [The Ninth Chapter of the Quran]). No place: Markaz Al-Shahīd 'Azzām Al-lāmiy. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?%3Da=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

Ḥaḍīr Al-'Ālam Al-Islāmiy (Islamic World Today). No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?%3Da=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

I. Join the Caravan

No date. *Ilhaq Bi Al-Qāfīlah (Join the Caravan)*. No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?a=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

II. Virtues of Jihad

No date. *Iltiifiable Ibad Bi Fadā'il Al-Jihād (Virtues of Jihad)*. No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?a=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

III. Declaration of Jihad


IV. Lessons for Jihad in Contemporary Era

No date. *'Ibar Wa Baṣā'īr Li Al-Jihād Fi Al-Asr Al-Ḥādir (Lessons for Jihad in Contemporary Era)*. No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?a=a82qriko (30 July 2010)

V. Killing a Muslim is a Crime


VI. Jihad of a Muslim Nation


VII. Point of Historic Transformation


VIII. Martyrs The Building Blocks of Nations


IX. Migration and Preparation


X. Series On Jihad Education and Development


No date. *'Ushshāq Al-Ḫūr (Those Who Yearn For Houris)*. No place: No publisher. Available in the Internet at http://tawhed.ws/a?a=a82qriko (30 July 2010)


Audio


SECONDARY SOURCES

Books & Articles


AP. 2001. Text of Al-Qaeda’s statement. 9 October.


285


-----------------


-----------------


-----------------


-----------------


Miller, John. 1998. Interview with Usamah bin Laden. ABC. May.


Time. Exclusive Interview: Conversation With Terror. 11 January.


Internet sources


OTHER MATERIALS


Chechen warlord claims theatre attack. 1 November.


Bruno, Greg. 2009. *Finding a Place for the ‘Sons of Iraq’*. Councils on Foreign Relation. 9 January. Available at


CNN. 2004. Purported bin Laden tape offers gold for Bremer. 7 May.


Sawt Al-Jihād. 1424 Hijrah calendar. “Bayān Min Al-Mujāhidīn Ilā Al-Ummah Al-Islāmiyyah (Mujahidin Pronouncement to Muslim Ummah)”. No. 3.


Wehrey, Frederic et. al. 2010. The Iraq Effect: The Middle East After the Iraq War (Summary). Santa Monica: Rand.


